

ellegante^{®2}

Instruction and Reference Guide

Model BLG2

Baby Lock Consumer Helpline: 800-313-4110 www.babylock.com

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

When using this machine, basic safety precautions should always be taken, including the following: Read all instructions before using.

DANGER - To reduce the risk of electric shock:

1. The machine should never be left unattended while plugged in. Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet immediately after using and before cleaning.

WARNING - To reduce the risk of burns, fire, electric shock, or injury to persons:

- 1. Do not allow this machine to be used as a toy. Close attention is necessary when the machine is used by or near children.
- 2. Use this machine only for its intended use as described in this manual. Use only accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.
- 3. Never operate this machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, if it has been dropped or damaged, or dropped into water. Return the machine to the nearest authorized retailer or service center for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.
- 4. Never operate the machine with any air openings blocked. Keep ventilation openings of the machine and foot control free from the accumulation of lint, dust, and loose cloth.
- 5. Never drop or insert any object into any opening.
- 6. Do not use outdoors.
- 7. Do not operate where aerosol (spray) products are being used or where oxygen is being administered.
- 8. To disconnect, turn the main switch to the symbol "O" position which represents off, then remove plug from outlet.
- 9. Do not unplug by pulling on cord. To unplug, grasp the plug, not the cord.
- 10. Keep fingers away from all moving parts. Special care is required around the machine needle.
- 11. Always use the proper needle plate. The wrong plate can cause the needle to break.
- 12. Do not use bent needles.
- 13. Do not pull or push fabric while stitching. It may deflect the needle causing it to break.
- 14. Switch the machine to the symbol "O" position when making any adjustments in the needle area.
- 15. Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet when removing covers, lubricating, or when making any other user servicing adjustments mentioned in the instruction manual.
- 16. This sewing machine is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.
- 17. Young children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with this machine.
- 18. If the LED light unit (light-emitting diode) is damaged, it must be replaced by authorized retailer.
- 19. Hold the foot controller plug when rewinding into cord reel. Do not allow the plug to whip when rewinding.
- 20. When lifting the sewing machine, be careful not to make any sudden or careless movements, otherwise you may injure your back or knees.
- 21. When transporting the sewing machine, be sure to carry it by its handle. Lifting the sewing machine by any other part may damage the machine or result in the machine falling, which could cause injuries.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS This machine is intended for household use.

FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA AND CYPRUS ONLY

If this machine is fitted with a three-pin non-rewireable BS plug then please read the following.

IMPORTANT

If the available socket outlet is not suitable for the plug supplied with this equipment, it should be cut off and an appropriate three-pin plug fitted. With alternative plugs an approved fuse must be fitted in the plug.

NOTE

The plug served from the main lead must be destroyed as a plug with bared flexible cords is hazardous if engaged in a live socket outlet. In the event of replacing the plug fuse, use a fuse approved by ASTA to BS 1362, i.e. carrying

the 🗰 mark, rating as marked on plug.

Always replace the fuse cover, never use plugs with the fuse cover omitted.

WARNING

DO NOT CONNECT EITHER WIRE TO THE EARTH TERMINAL WHICH IS MARKED WITH THE LETTER 'E', BY THE EARTH SYMBOL \perp OR COLOURED GREEN OR GREEN AND YELLOW.

The wires in this main lead are coloured in accordance with the following code:

Blue Neutral

Brown Live

As the colours of the wiring in the main lead of this appliance may not correspond with the coloured markings identifying the terminals in your plug, proceed as follows.

The wire which is coloured blue must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter 'N' or coloured black or blue.

The wire which is coloured brown must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter 'L' or coloured red or brown.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of Conformity (For USA Only)

Responsible Party: Tacony Corporation 1760 Gilsinn Lane, Fenton, Missouri 63026

declares that the product

Product Name: Baby Lock Sewing Machine Model Number: BLG2-NZ/BLG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the retailer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The enclosed interface cable should be used in order to ensure compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Tacony Corporation could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CONGRATULATIONS ON CHOOSING OUR MACHINE

Your machine is the most advanced computerized household embroidery and sewing machine. To fully enjoy all the features incorporated, we suggest that you study the manual.

PLEASE READ BEFORE USING THIS MACHINE

For safe operation

- 1. Be sure to keep your eye on the needle while sewing. Do not touch the handwheel, thread take-up, needle, or other moving parts.
- 2. Remember to turn off the power switch and unplug the cord when:
 - Operation is completed
 - Replacing or removing the needle or any other parts
 - A power failure occurs during use
 - Maintaining the machine
 - Leaving the machine unattended.
- 3. Do not store anything on the foot controller.
- 4. Plug the machine directly into the wall. Do not use extension cords.
- 5. Do not place or store the machine near heaters or other hot appliances, in any location exposed to extremely high or low temperatures, high humidity or dusty locations. Doing so could cause the machine to malfunction.
- 6. Never operate the machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, if it has been dropped or damaged, or water is spilled on the unit. Return the machine to the nearest authorized retailer or service center for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.
- 7. The sewing machine plastic bag should be kept out of the reach of children or disposed of. Never allow children to play with plastic bags due to the danger of suffocation.
- 8. Do not place this sewing machine on an unstable surface, such as an unsteady or slanted table; otherwise the sewing machine may fall, resulting in injuries.

For a longer service life

- 1. When storing this machine, avoid direct sunlight and high humidity locations. Do not use or store the machine near a space heater, iron, halogen lamp, or other hot objects.
- 2. Use only neutral soaps or detergents to clean the case. Benzene, thinner, and scouring powders can damage the case and machine, and should never be used.
- 3. Do not drop or hit the machine.
- 4. Always consult the operation manual when replacing or installing any assemblies, the presser feet, needle, or other parts to assure correct installation.
- 5. Use only the interface cable (USB cable) included with this machine.

For repair or adjustment

In the event a malfunction occurs or adjustment is required, first follow the troubleshooting table in the back of the operation manual to inspect and adjust the machine yourself. If the problem persists, please consult your local authorized Baby Lock retailer.

For additional product information and updates, visit our web site at www.babylock.com

The contents of this manual and specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE

SPECIAL FEATURES



Check operations and view advice on the large LCD (liquid crystal display).



J

Prepare the bobbin thread with one touch.

The automatic thread tension makes trial sewing unnecessary.

Automatic threading makes threading quick and easy.

Getting Ready

To learn the operation of the principal parts and the screens



Utility Stitches

Pre-programmed with more than 100 frequently used stitches



Sewing Basics

To learn how to prepare for sewing and basic sewing operations



Character/Decorative Stitches

The variety of stitches widen your creativity



Embroidery Edit

Designs can be combined, rotated or enlarged



Embroidery

Maximum 30 cm x 18 cm (approx. 12 x 7 inches) for large embroidery designs



Appendix

Caring for your machine and dealing with errors and malfunctions

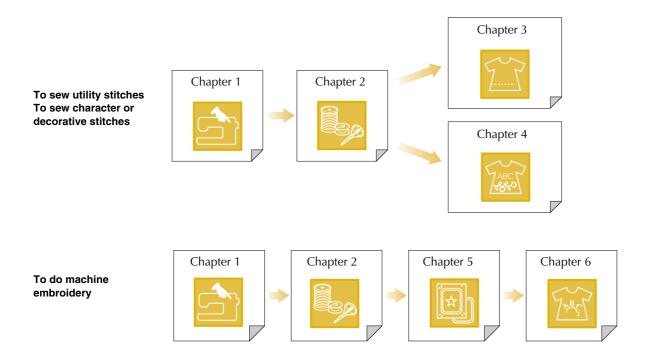


HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Chapter 1 and Chapter 2 explain your sewing machine's basic operation procedures for someone who is using the sewing machine for the first time. If you want to sew utility stitches or character/ decorative stitches, read Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, then go on to Chapter 3 (Utility Stitches) or Chapter 4 (Character/ Decorative Stitches).

When you are ready to begin using the embroidery function after reading Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, proceed to Chapter 5 (Embroidery). Once you understand the steps explained in Chapter 5, go on to Chapter 6 (Embroidery Edit) for an explanation about the convenient embroidery edit functions. In the screens that appear in the step-by-step directions the parts that are used for the operation are shown

in _____. Compare the screen in the directions with the actual screen, and carry out the operation. If, while using the machine, you experience something you do not understand, or there is a function you would like to know more about, refer to the index at the back of the operation manual in conjunction with the table of contents to find the section of the manual you should refer to.



CONTENTS

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONSi
FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA
AND CYPRUS ONLY ii
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of
Conformity (For USA Only) iii
CONGRATULATIONS ON CHOOSING OUR MACHINE iv
WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINEvi
HOW TO USE THIS MANUALvii
NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS
AND THEIR FUNCTIONS1
Machine1
Needle and Presser Foot Section
Embroidery Unit3
Operation Buttons
Included Accessories4
Options7
Removing the LCD cover7
Attaching the LCD cover

9

43

Chapter 1 Getting Ready

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF	10
LCD SCREEN	11
Screens Operations Performed Using a USB Mouse	14
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key	16
Using the Machine Operation Mode Key	21
Using the Pattern Explanation Key	22
LOWER THREADING	23
Winding the Bobbin	23
Setting the Bobbin	
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread	
running op the bobbin rinead	
UPPER THREADING	
UPPER THREADING	29
UPPER THREADING Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button	29
UPPER THREADING	29
UPPER THREADING	29
UPPER THREADING Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button Threading Manually	29
UPPER THREADING	29 31 34 36 37
UPPER THREADING Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button Threading Manually Using the Twin Needle Mode Using Threads that Unwind Quickly CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT Removing the Presser Foot	29 31 34 36 37 37
UPPER THREADING	29 31 34 36 37 37 37

Chapter 2 Sewing Basics

SEWING	44
Sewing a Stitch	44
Sewing Reinforcement Stitches	46
Sewing Curves	
Changing Sewing Direction	46
Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics	
Sewing Lightweight Fabrics	48
Sewing Stretch Fabrics	
STITCH SETTINGS	49
Setting the Stitch Width	
Setting the Stitch Length	
Setting the Thread Tension	
USEFUL FUNCTIONS	51
Automatic Reinforcement Stitching	
Automatic Thread Cutting	
Pivoting	
Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot	
Pressure)	55
Locking the Screen	
napter 3 Utility Stitches	57
1 /	

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES	58
Selecting a Stitch	. 59
Saving Your Stitch Settings	

Using the Sewing Type Selection Key	61
SEWING THE STITCHES	
Straight Stitches	63
Dart Seam	
Gathering	68
Flat Fell Seam	
Pintuck	69
Zigzag Stitches	71
Elastic Zigzag Stitches	73
Overcasting	
Quilting	79
Blind Hem Stitches	
Appliqué	90
Shelltuck Stitches	
Scallop Stitches	92
Top Stitching	92
Smocking Stitches	
Fagoting	93
Tape or Elastic Attaching	94
Heirloom	
One-step Buttonholes	97
Four-step Buttonholes	
Bar Tacks	
Button Sewing	
Eyelet	109
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zig.	zag Stitch) .110
Zipper Insertion	

Chapter 4 Character/Decorative Stitches 115

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS	116
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative	
Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch	
Patterns/Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns	118
Alphabet Characters	118
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS	120
Sewing Attractive Finishes	120
Basic Sewing	
Making Adjustments	121
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS	123
Changing the Size	124
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only	
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image	
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	125
Sewing a Pattern Continuously	125
Changing Thread Density	
(for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	
Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern	
Checking the Image	127
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS	128
Before Combining	
Combining Various Stitch Patterns	128
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns	
Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns	
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length	131
Making Step Stitch Patterns	
(for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	132
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	
Stitch Data Precautions	
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory	136
Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media	
(Commercially Available)	
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	
Recalling from the Computer	142

Chapter 5 Embroidery 1	43
•	
BEFORE EMBROIDERING	
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W"	. 144 . 145
Attaching the Embroidery Unit	.146
SELECTING PATTERNS	149
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Floral alphabet Patterns/	
Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs	
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns Selecting Frame Patterns	
Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards	
Selecting Patterns from USB media/Computer	
VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN	
PREPARING THE FABRIC	
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (backing) to the Fabric	
Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges	
ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME	
CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION	
Checking the Pattern Position	
Previewing the Completed Pattern	
SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN	165
Sewing Attractive Finishes	
Sewing Embroidery Patterns	
Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY	. 168
PROCESS	170
If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread	
If the Thread Breaks During Sewing	
Restarting from the Beginning	.171
Automatically Resuming Embroidery	1 70
When the Power Goes Off Manually Resuming Embroidery	.1/2
After Turning Off the Power	.173
MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS	
Adjusting Thread Tension	.174
Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function	
(END COLOR TRIM) Using the Thread Trimming Function	.175
(JUMP STITCH TRIM)	.175
Adjusting the Embroidery Speed	.176
Changing the Thread Color Display	.177
Changing the Embroidery Frame Display	
REVISING THE PATTERN	
Aligning the Pattern and the Needle	
Changing the Size	
Rotating the Pattern	
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	.183
Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only)	183
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns	
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	
Embroidery Data Precautions	
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory	.187
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media	100
(Commercially Available) Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	.191
Recalling from the Computer	
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS	
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1) Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2)	
come a trancer attent to make an Applique (2)	
Chapter 6 Embroidery Edit 1	97
EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS	198
SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT	
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/	
Frame Patterns/Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs	
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns	.200

EDITING PATTERNS	203
Moving the Pattern	205
Rotating the Pattern	205
Changing the Size of the Pattern	
Deleting the Pattern	
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character	
Patterns	207
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing	207
Reducing Character Spacing	
Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character	
in a Pattern	209
Changing the Thread Color	209
Creating a Custom Thread Table	
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table	
Designing Repeated Patterns	
After Editing	
COMBINING PATTERNS	219
Editing Combined Patterns	
Sewing Combined Patterns	
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	
hapter 7 Appendix	225
CARE AND MAINTENANCE	226
Cleaning the LCD Screen	
Cleaning the Machine Casing	
Cleaning the Race	
Cleaning the Bobbin Case	
ADJUSTING THE SCREEN	
Screen Visibility is Low	
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning	228

SOFTWARE240Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media240Upgrade Procedure Using Computer241STITCH SETTING CHART243

INDEX......250

UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S

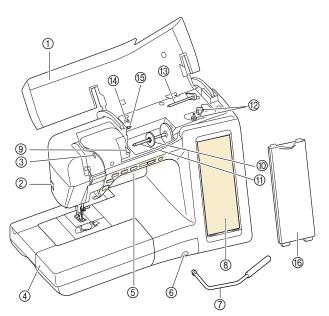
4 5 6

NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

The names of the various parts of the sewing machine and their functions are described below. Before using the sewing machine, carefully read these descriptions to learn the names of the machine parts.

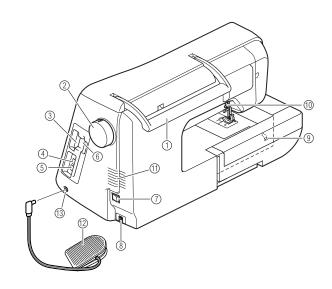
Machine

■ Front View



- (1) Top cover
- Open the top cover to thread the machine and wind the bobbin. 2 Thread cutter
- Pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them.
- ③ Thread take-up lever check window Look through the window to check the upper thread passing through the thread take-up lever.
- (4) Flat bed attachment with accessory compartment Store presser feet and bobbins in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment. When sewing cylindrical pieces, remove the flat bed attachment.
- Operation buttons (6 buttons) and sewing speed (5)controller
- Use these buttons and the slide to operate the sewing machine. Knee lifter slot 6
- Insert the knee lifter into the slot.
- (7)Knee lifter
- Use the knee lifter to raise and lower the presser foot. (8) LCD (liquid crystal display)
- Settings for the selected stitch and error messages appear in the LCD.
- (9) Thread guide plate Pass the thread around the thread guide plate when threading upper thread.
- Spool cap (10)
- Use the spool cap to hold the spool in place.
- (1) Spool pin
- Place a spool of thread on the spool pin.
- Bobbin winder 12 Use the bobbin winder when winding the bobbin. (13) Supplemental spool pin
- Use this spool pin to wind the bobbin thread, or to sew with the twin needle.
- (14) Thread guide for bobbin winding Pass the thread around this thread guide when winding the bobbin thread.
- Pretension disk (15) Pass the thread around the pretension disk when winding the bobbin thread.
- (16) LCD cover Attach the cover when not using the machine.

■ Right-side/Rear View



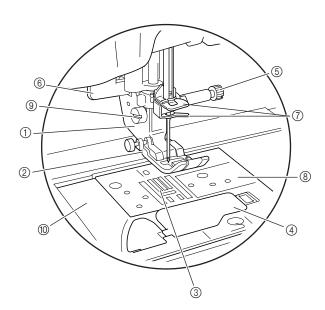
Handle (\mathbf{f})

- Carry the sewing machine by its handle when transporting the machine.
- (2)Handwheel

Turn the handwheel toward you to raise and lower the needle. The wheel should be turned toward the front of the machine.

- Embroidery card slot Insert the embroidery cards (sold separately) into the embroidery card slot.
- (4)USB port connector for media In order to send patterns from/to USB media, plug the USB media directly into the USB port connector.
- USB port connector for computer In order to import/export patterns between a computer and the machine, plug the USB cable into the USB port connector.
- Touch pen holder (6)
- Use the touch pen holder to hold the touch pen when not in use. Main power switch $\overline{\mathcal{O}}$
- Use the main power switch to turn the sewing machine ON and OFF.
- Power cord receptacle 8
- Insert the power cord into the machine receptacle. (9)
- Feed dog position switch Use the feed dog position switch to lower the feed dogs. Presser foot lever (10)
 - Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot.
- ⊕ Air vent
- The air vent allows the air surrounding the motor to circulate. Do not cover the air vent while the sewing machine is being used. Foot controller with retractable cord
- (12) Depress the foot controller to control the speed of the machine. Foot controller jack 13
 - Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.

Needle and Presser Foot Section



① Presser foot holder

The presser foot is attached onto the presser foot holder. (2) **Presser foot**

The presser foot applies pressure consistently on the fabric as sewing takes place. Attach the appropriate presser foot for the selected stitch.

- ③ Feed dogs
- The feed dogs feed the fabric in the sewing direction. **Bobbin cover**
- Open the bobbin cover to set the bobbin.(5) Needle clamp screw
- Use the needle clamp screw to hold the needle in place. (6) Buttonhole lever

The buttonhole lever is used with the one-step buttonhole foot to create buttonholes.

⑦ Needle bar thread guides Pass the upper thread through the

Pass the upper thread through the two needle bar thread guides.

8 Needle plate The needle plate is marked with guides to help sew straight

seams.

9 Presser foot holder screw

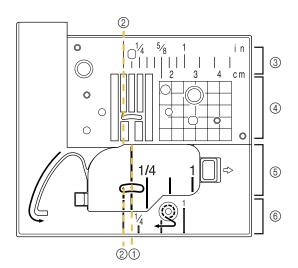
Use the presser foot holder screw to hold the presser foot holder in place.

10 Needle plate cover

Remove the needle plate cover to clean the race.

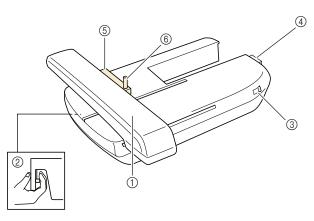
Measurements on the needle plate, bobbin cover and needle plate cover

The measurements on the bobbin cover are references for patterns with a middle (center) needle position. The measurements on the needle plate and the needle plate cover are references for stitches with a left needle position.



- ① For stitches with a middle (center) needle position
- ② For stitches with a left needle position
- ③ Left needle position on the needle plate <inch>
- ④ Left needle position on the needle plate <cm>
- (5) Middle (center) needle position on the bobbin cover <inch>
- 6 Left needle position on the needle plate cover <inch>

Embroidery Unit



① Carriage

The carriage moves the embroidery frame automatically when embroidering.

- ② Release button (located under the embroidery unit) Press the release button to remove the embroidery unit.
- ③ Feed dog position switch Use the feed dog position switch to raise and lower the feed dogs while the embroidery unit is attached.
- ④ Embroidery unit connection Insert the embroidery unit connection into the connection port when attaching the embroidery unit.
- (5) Embroidery frame holder Insert the embroidery frame into the embroidery frame holder to hold the frame in place.
 (6) Frame-securing lever
- Frame-securing lever Press the frame-securing lever down to secure the embroidery frame.

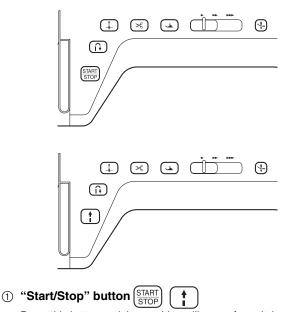
CAUTION

• After the embroidery frame is set in the frame holder, be sure the frame-securing lever is correctly lowered.

🗸 Note

- Be sure that the feed dog position switch on the embroidery unit is located at right when embroidering.
- You can also sew utility/decorative stitches with the embroidery unit attached. Set the feed dog position switch on the embroidery unit to the appropriate setting.

Operation Buttons



Press this button and the machine will sew a few stitches at a slow speed and then begin sewing at the speed set by the sewing speed controller. Press the button again to stop the machine. Hold the button in to sew at the machine's slowest speed. The button changes color according to the machine's operation mode.

Green:

Red:

the machine is ready to sew or is sewing. the machine cannot sew.

- ② "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button
 - Use this button to sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing. Press this button, and the machine sews 3 stitches in the same spot and stops automatically. For straight and zigzag stitch patterns that take reverse stitches, the machine will sew reverse stitches at low speed only while holding down the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (the stitches are sewn in the opposite direction).
- ③ "Needle Position" button

Use this button when changing sewing direction or for detailed sewing in small areas. Press this button to raise or lower the needle position. Press the button twice to sew a single stitch.

- ④ "Thread Cutter" button Press this button after sewing to automatically trim the excess thread.
- ⑤ "Presser Foot Lifter" button 💶

Press this button to lower the presser foot and apply pressure to the fabric. Press this button again to raise the presser foot.

- 6 Sewing Speed controller
 - Use this controller to adjust the sewing speed. Move the slide to the left to sew at slower speeds. Move the slide to the right to sew at higher speeds. Beginners should sew at a slow speed.
- ⑦ "Automatic Threading" button ↔

Use this button to automatically thread the needle.

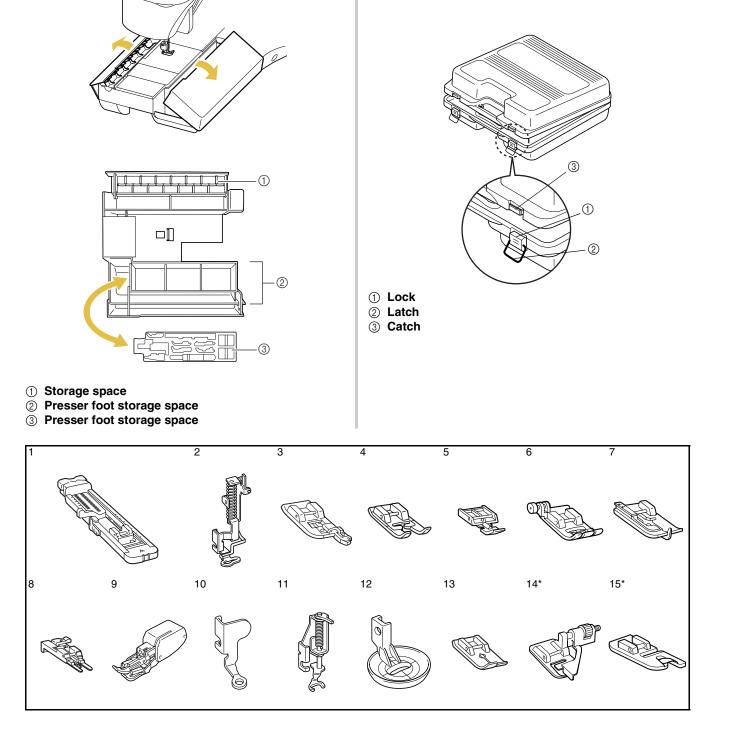
CAUTION

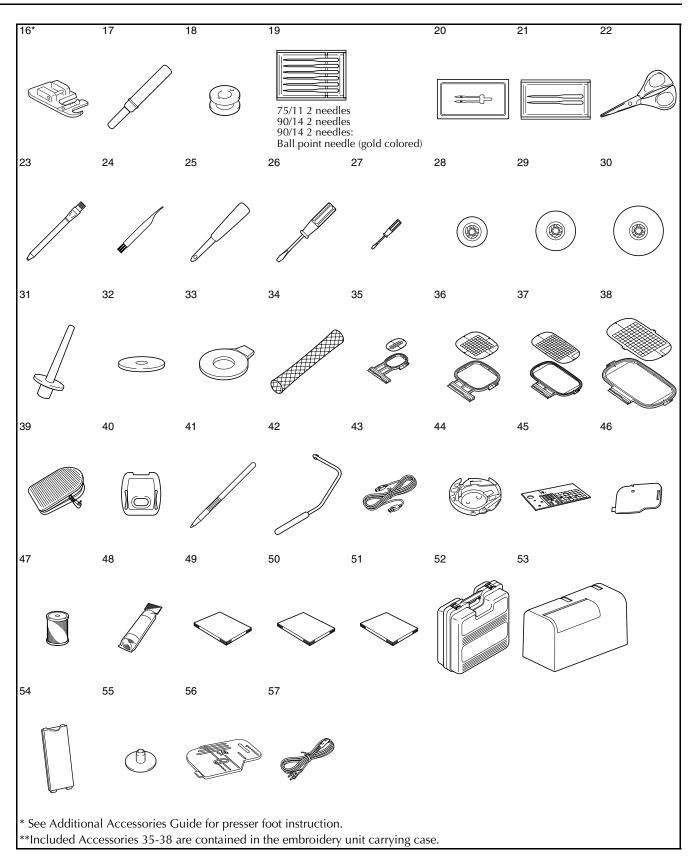
• Do not press the thread cutter button after the threads have already been cut. Otherwise, the needle may break, the threads may become tangled, or damage to the machine may occur.

Included Accessories

Pull the top of the flat bed attachment to open the accessory compartment.

Included Accessories 35-38 are contained in the embroidery unit carrying case. To open the embroidery unit carrying case, raise the lock and move the latch out of position. To re-hook the latches and securely close the case, position the latch on the catch of the unit lid and lower the lock till it snaps.





No.	Part Name	Part Code
	Buttonhole foot "A"	X57789-151
2	Embroidery foot "W"	XC8156-451
	Overcasting foot "G"	XC3098-051
4	Monogramming foot "N"	X53840-351
	Zipper foot "I"	X59370-051
6	Zigzag foot "J" (on machine)	XC3021-051
7	Blind stitch foot "R"	X56409-051
8	Button fitting foot "M"	130489-001
9	Walking foot	X59816-104
10	Free-motion quilting foot "C"	XE0765-001
11	Free-motion open toe quilting foot "O"	XE0767-001
12	Free-motion echo quilting foot "E"	XE0766-001
13	Straight stitch foot	XD0826-051
	Blind stitch foot (with guide)*	XA0059-001
	Narrow hemmer foot*	184600-001
	Cording foot (3 cord guide)*	XA6871-001
	Seam ripper	X54243-001
-	Bobbin × 10	X52860-150
-	Needle set	X58358-051
_	Twin needle	X59296-151
	Ball point needle set	XD0705-051
	Scissors	184783-051
	Chalk pen	184944-001
	Cleaning brush	X59476-051
	Eyelet punch	135793-001
	Screwdriver (large)	X55467-051
	Screwdriver (small)	X55468-051
	Spool cap (small)	130013-154
	Spool cap (medium) × 2	X55260-153
	Spool cap (large)	130012-054
	Vertical spool pin	XC8619-051
	Spool felt	X57045-051
	Disc-shaped screwdriver	XC1074-051
	Spool net	XA5523-050
35	Embroidery frame set (small) H 2 cm \times W 6 cm (H 1 inch \times W 2-1/2 inches)	EF73: Frame EF77: Embroidery sheet
36	Embroidery frame set (medium) H 10 cm \times W 10 cm (H 4 inches \times W 4 inches)	EF74: Frame EF78: Embroidery sheet
37	Embroidery frame set (large) H 18 cm × W 13 cm (H 7 inches × W 5 inches)	EF75: Frame EF79: Embroidery sheet
	Embroidery frame set (extra large) H 30 cm \times W 18 cm (H 12 inches \times W 7 inches)	EF76: Frame EF80: Embroidery sheet
39	Foot controller	XC8028-051
40	Embroidery needle plate cover	XA9939-051
41	Touch pen (stylus)	XA9940-051
42	Knee lifter	XA6941-051
42	USB cable	XD0745-051
43		
43 44	Alternate bobbin case (pink screw)	XC8167-251
43 44 45	Alternate bobbin case (pink screw) Straight stitch needle plate	XC8167-251 XC8362-051
43 44 45 46	Alternate bobbin case (pink screw) Straight stitch needle plate Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole)	XC8362-051 XC8449-051
43 44 45 46 47	Alternate bobbin case (pink screw) Straight stitch needle plate Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole) Embroidery bobbin thread	XC8362-051 XC8449-051 BBT-W
 43 44 45 46 47 48 	Alternate bobbin case (pink screw) Straight stitch needle plate Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole) Embroidery bobbin thread Stabilizer material	XC8362-051 XC8449-051 BBT-W X81176-001
 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 	Alternate bobbin case (pink screw) Straight stitch needle plate Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole) Embroidery bobbin thread	XC8362-051 XC8449-051 BBT-W

No.	Part Name	Part Code
51	Additional accessories guide	BLG2-NZ: XE2639-001 BLG2: XE2554-001
52	Embroidery unit carrying case	XC8150-051
53	Hard case	XC7750-053
54	LCD cover	XC8468-051
55	Bobbin center pin	XC8661-051
56	Bobbin cover	XE0756-001
57	Power cord	XC6052-051

* See Additional Accessories Guide for presser foot instruction.

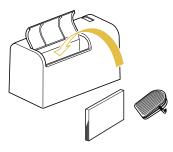
Memo

(For U.S.A. only)

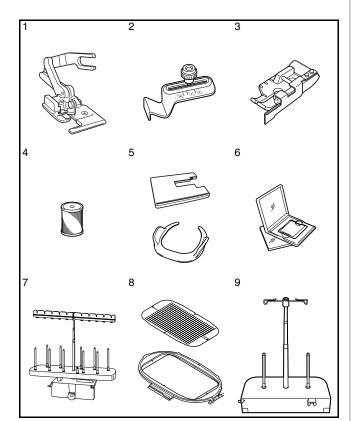
Foot controller: Model S This foot controller can be used with this machine models: BLG2-NZ/BLG2.

א Memo

- Always use accessories recommended for this machine.
- The screw of the presser foot holder is available through your authorized retailer (Part code XA4813-051).
- Included accessories 39, 49, 50 and 51 can be stored in the machine's hard case.



Options



No.	Part Name	Part Code
1	Side cutter foot	XC3923-001
2	Seam guide	BLG-SG
3	1/4" quilting foot with guide	XC6800-251
4	Embroidery bobbin thread (White)	BBT-W
	Embroidery bobbin thread (Black)	BBT-B
5	Table and free motion grip	BLG-ET
6	Embroidery card	
7	Spool stand	BLG-TS
8	Embroidery frame set (extra large) H 26 cm x W 16 cm (10 - 1/4 inches (H) x 6 - 1/4 inches (W))	EF81: Frame EF86: Embroidery sheet
9	2-thread spool stand	BLG-STS

Memo

• All specifications are correct at the time of printing.

Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.

Note

- Embroidery cards purchased in foreign countries may not work with your machine.
- Use Baby Lock embroidery cards with your machine. Please see your retailer for availability of additional embroidery cards.
- Visit your Baby Lock retailer for a complete listing of optional accessories available for your machine, or visit the Baby Lock web site at www. babylock. com.

Removing the LCD cover

- While pressing down on the latch at the top of the LCD cover, pull the cover towards you.



1 Latch



Remove the LCD cover.

Attaching the LCD cover

Insert the tabs at the bottom of the LCD cover into the grooves at the bottom of the LCD.



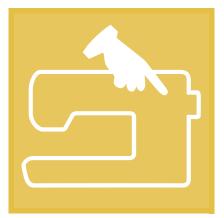
① Tabs

② Grooves

While pressing the latch at the top of the LCD cover, insert the tabs at the top of the LCD cover into the grooves at the top of the LCD.



Latch
 Tabs



Chapter **1** Getting Ready

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF10
LCD SCREEN11
■ Key Functions
Screens Operations Performed Using a USB Mouse14
■ Clicking a key
Changing pages15
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key16
Adjusting Screen Brightness
■ Choosing the Display Language
Using the Machine Operation Mode Key21
Using the Pattern Explanation Key22
LOWER THREADING23
Winding the Bobbin23
Using the Supplemental Spool Pin23
■ Using the Spool Pin25
Setting the Bobbin
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread28
UPPER THREADING29
Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button
Threading Manually
Using the Twin Needle Mode
Using Threads that Unwind Quickly
Using the Spool Net
Using the Vertical Spool Pin
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT
Removing the Presser Foot
Attaching the Presser Foot
Attaching the Walking Foot
CHANGING THE NEEDLE
■ About the Needle
■ Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF

WARNING

- Use only regular household electricity as the power source. Using other power sources may result in fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.
- Make sure that the plugs on the power cord are firmly inserted into the electrical outlet and the power cord receptacle on the machine.
- Do not insert the plug on the power cord into an electrical outlet that is in poor condition.
- Turn the main power to OFF and remove the plug in the following circumstances: When you are away from the machine After using the machine When the power fails during use
 - When the machine does not operate correctly due to a bad connection or a disconnection
 - **During electrical storms**

CAUTION

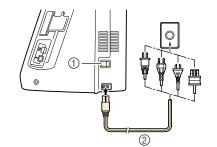
- Use only the power cord included with this machine.
- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters with many other appliances plugged in to them. Fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not touch the plug with wet hands. Electric shock may result.
- When unplugging the machine, always turn the main power to OFF first. Always grasp the plug to remove it from the outlet. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord, or lead to fire or electric shock.
- Do not allow the power cord to be cut, damaged, modified, forcefully bent, pulled, twisted, or bundled. Do not place heavy objects on the cord. Do not subject the cord to heat. These things may damage the cord, or cause fire or electric shock. If the cord or plug is damaged, take the machine to your authorized retailer for repairs before continuing use.
- Unplug the power cord if the machine is not to be used for a long period of time. Otherwise, a fire may result.
- When leaving the machine unattended, either the main switch of the machine should be turned to OFF or the plug must be removed from the socket-outlet.
- When servicing the machine or when removing covers either the machine or the electrical set must be unplugged.
- For U.S.A. only

This appliance has a polarized plug (one blade wider than the other). To reduce the risk of electrical shock, this plug is intended to fit in a polarized outlet only one way.

If the plug does not fit fully in the outlet, reverse the plug. If it still does not fit, contact a qualified electrician to install the proper outlet. Do not modify the plug in any way.

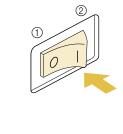
OFF
 ON

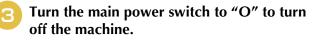
Insert the power cord into the power cord receptacle, then insert the plug into a wall outlet.



- ① Main power switch
- ② Power cord

Turn the main power switch to "I" to turn on the machine.





LCD SCREEN

When switching on the machine, the screen will display the name of the machine. Touch the screen to display the utility stitch. Either "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is selected, depending on the setting selected in the setting screen (see page 16).

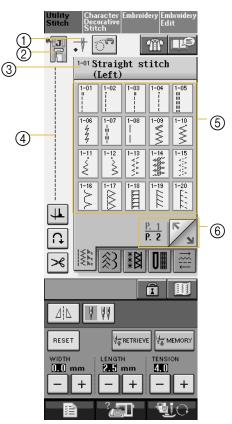
Press a key with your finger to select the stitch pattern, to select a machine function, or to select an operation indicated on the key.

K Note

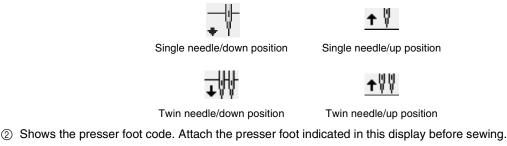
• When the straight stitch needle plate is on the machine, the needle will automatically move to the middle position.

א Memo

• Only touch the screen with your finger or the included touch pen. Do not use a sharp pencil, screwdriver, or other hard or sharp object. It is not necessary to press hard on the screen. Pressing too hard or using a sharp object may damage the screen.



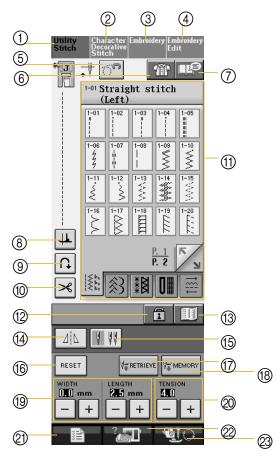
① Shows single or twin needle mode setting, and the needle stop position.



- 3 Shows the name and code number of the selected stitch.
- ④ Shows a preview of the selected stitch.
- ⑤ Shows the stitch patterns.
- 6 Shows additional pages that can be displayed.
- * All key functions of the LCD are explained in the "key functions" table on the following page.



■ Key Functions



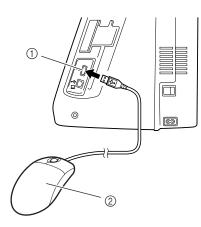
No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page		
1	Utility Stitch	Utility stitch key	Press this key to select a straight stitch, zigzag stitch, buttonhole, blind hem stitch, or other stitches commonly used in garment construction.			
2	Character Decorative Stitch	Character/Decorative stitch key	Press this key to select character or decorative stitch patterns.			
3	Embroidery	Embroidery key	Attach the embroidery unit and press this key to sew embroidery.	149		
4	Embroidery Edit	Embroidery edit key	Press this key to combine embroidery patterns. With the embroidery edit functions, you can also create original embroidery patterns or frame patterns.	199		
5	്	Free-motion mode key	Press this key to enter free-motion sewing mode. The presser foot is raised to a height appropriate for free-motion quilting.	83		
6	î	Sewing type selection key	Press this key when you need help selecting the appropriate stitch pattern for the sewing application and when you need instructions on how to sew the stitch pattern. This key is very helpful for beginners.	61		
7		Pattern explanation key	Press this key to see an explanation of the selected pattern.	22		
8	4	Pivot key	Press this key to select the pivot setting. When the pivot setting is selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered. If this key appears as III, it cannot be used.	53		
			 Be sure the needle position on page 2 of Machine Settings is set in the down position. 			

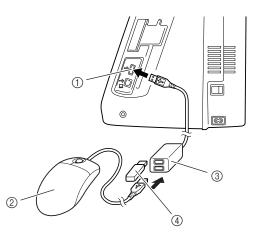
No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page			
9	Û	Automatic reinforcement stitch key	Press this key to use the automatic reinforcement stitching (reverse stitching) setting. If you select this setting before sewing, the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches).				
0	\varkappa	Automatic thread cutting key	Press this key to set the automatic thread cutting function. Set the automatic thread cutting function before sewing to have the machine automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches) and trim the threads after sewing.				
1	1-11 Straight stitch Certh 1 1 1	Stitch selection display	Press the key of the pattern you want to sew. Use E Press the key of the pattern you want to sew. Use E Press E Press to change selection screens.	58			
12	Ĩ	Screen lock key	Press this key to lock the screen.When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings.	55			
13		Image key	Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.	59			
14		Mirror image key	Press this key to create a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern. If the key display is light gray, a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn.	59			
15	4 44	Needle mode selection key (single/ double)	Press this key to select twin needle sewing mode. The sewing mode changes between single needle mode and twin needle mode each time you press the key. If the key display is light gray, the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn in twin needle mode.	34			
16	RESET	Reset key	Press this key to return the selected stitch pattern saved settings to the original settings.	49-50			
1	₩ ₩ RETRIEVE	Retrieve key	Press this key to retrieve a saved pattern.	61			
(18)	₩ MEMORY	Manual memory key	Change the stitch pattern settings (zigzag width and stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting or automatic reinforcement stitching, etc.), then save them by pressing this key. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch pattern.	60			
19	WIDTH DID mm - + - +	Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the zigzag width and stitch length settings of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to adjust the zigzag width and stitch length settings.	49			
0		Thread tension key	Shows the thread tension setting of the currently selected stitch pattern. The thread tension is usually set automatically. You can use the plus and minus keys to change the thread tension settings.	50			
2)		Machine setting mode key	Press this key to change the needle stop position, turn the buzzer ON/OFF, adjust the pattern or screen, and change other machine settings.	16			
2	-?@]	Machine operation mode key	Press this key to see explanations for upper threading, winding the bobbin, changing the presser foot, and how to use the machine.	21			
23	শ্বা	Presser foot/Needle exchange key	Press this key before changing the needle, the presser foot, etc. This key locks or unlocks all key and button functions to prevent operation of the machine.	37-40			

Screens Operations Performed Using a USB Mouse

If a USB mouse (sold separately by computer retailers) is connected to the sewing machine, the mouse can be used to perform operations in the screens.

In addition, a USB hub can be connected so that USB media and a USB mouse can be used at the same time.





- ① USB port connector for media
- ② USB mouse
- ③ USB hub
- ④ USB media

🕂 Note

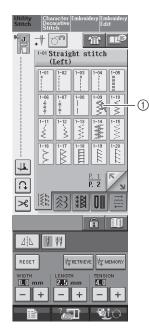
- Some mouse types cannot be used to operate the machine. For details on the USB mouse types that are compatible, check www.babylock.com.
- Do not perform operations with the mouse while also touching the screen with your finger or the included touch pen.
- A USB mouse and USB hub can be connected or disconnected at any time.
- Only the left mouse button and its wheel can be used to perform operations. No other buttons can be used.
- Do not insert two or more USB media into a USB hub. Only one USB media can be recognized.

■ Clicking a key

When the mouse is connected, the pointer appears in the screen. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired key, and then click the left mouse button.



Double-clicking has no effect.



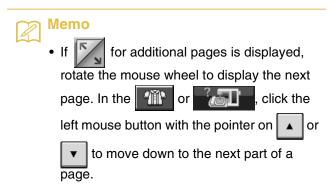
① Pointer





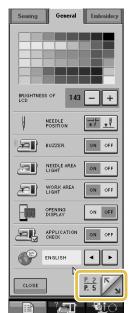
■ Changing pages

Rotate the mouse wheel to switch through the tabs of the pattern selection screens.













Sutch	Stite	h	Ean			
R	. # [7		[P	
\odot						
	α	b	С	d	е	
	f	g	h	i	J	
	k	Ι	m	n	\circ	
	q	q	r	ŝ	t	
	u	V	W	×	У	
₩	z			,		
D	CLO	SE	_			
\succ	ABC	ab	c	-9?!-	ÄÅä∙	j
Lacos				Î		
۵Þ				DE	LETE	
'atat 13	L	s		٥	IEMORY	
WIDTH	nm		i nm	tens 3.6	ION	
	+	-	+	_	+	
1000	ì	?	D		io'	

Using the Machine Setting Mode Key

Press **b** to change the default machine settings (needle stop position, embroidery speed, opening

display, etc.) Press Sewing , General or Embroidery to display the different settings screens.

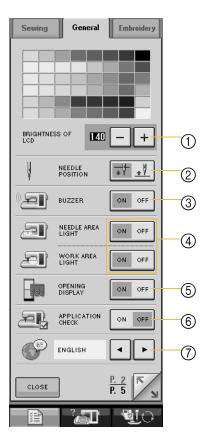
🏹 Memo

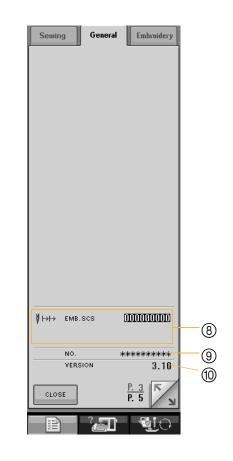
- Some of these functions will be available in future technology upgrades.
 - Press or to display a different settings screen.

Sewing settings

- General Embroidery WIDTH ÓN **ÓFF** (1) -m-ADJUST VERTI. 00 1 + 2 FINE ADJUST 00 PRESSER FOOT HEIGHT 7.5 4 3 PRESSER FOOT PRESSURE 8 + (4) INITIAL POSITION (5) PIVOTING 6) FREE MOTION (7)+ 1.0 HEIGHT AUTOMATIC FABRIC SENSOR SYSTEM 5 OFF ON (8) CLOSE P
- ① Select whether to use the sewing speed controller to determine the zigzag width (see page 82).
- ② Make adjustments to character or decorative stitch patterns (see page 121).
- ③ Adjust the presser foot height. (Select the height of the presser foot when the presser foot is raised.)
- ④ Adjust the presser foot pressure. (The higher the number, the greater the pressure will be. Set the pressure at 3 for normal sewing.)
- ⑤ Change the initial position of the needle when utility stitch is selected. (Choose left or middle position).
- 6 Change the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped when the pivot setting is selected (see page 53). Adjust the presser foot to one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm and 7.5 mm).
- ⑦ Change the height of the presser foot when the machine is set to free-motion sewing mode (see page 83).
- (a) When set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by an internal sensor while sewing, so the fabric can be fed smoothly (see pages 47 and 55).

General settings



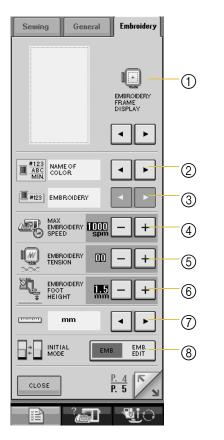


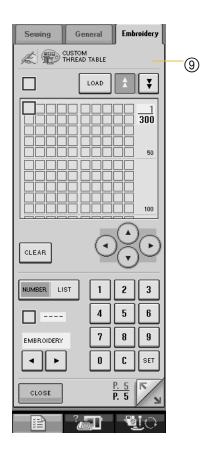
- ① Change the brightness of the LCD (see page 19).
- ② Select the needle stop position (the needle position when the machine is not operating) to be up or down. Select the down position when using the pivot key.
- ③ Turn the buzzer ON/OFF.
- ④ Turn the Needle Area and Work Area Lights ON/OFF.
- ⑤ Turn the opening screen display ON/OFF.
- ⑥ Use when running an application.
- ⑦ Change the display language (see page 20).
- ③ Display the service count of embroidery stitches. The service count is a reminder to take your machine in for regular servicing. (Contact your authorized retailer for details.)
- (9) The "NO." is the number for the embroidery and sewing machine.
- 1 Display the program version.

א Memo

• The latest version of software is installed in your machine. Check with your local authorized Baby Lock retailer or at www.babylock.com for available updates (see page 240).

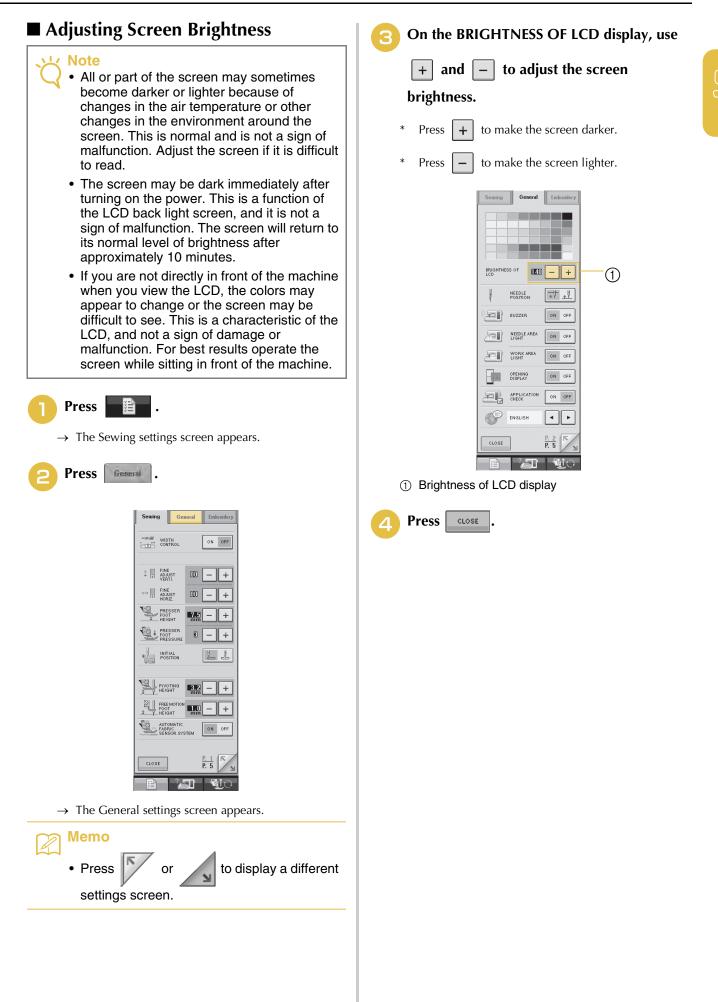
Embroidery settings





- ① Select from among 10 embroidery frame displays (see page 178).
- ② Change the thread color display on the embroidery screen; thread number, color name or each time to embroider (see page 177).
- ③ When the thread number #123 is selected, select among six thread brands (see page 177).
- ④ Adjust the maximum embroidery speed setting (see page 176).
- (5) Adjust the thread tension for embroidering.
- ⑥ Select the height of the embroidery foot "W" during embroidering (see page 157).
- ⑦ Change the display units (mm/inch).
- (8) Change the initial mode of the display (embroidery/embroidery edit).
- 9 Customize the thread color numbers (see page 210).

Getting Ready



Choosing the Display Language
Press \blacksquare . \rightarrow The Sewing settings screen appears.
2 Press General.
Sewing General Embruidery
MIDTH ON OFF
3 FINE ADDR51 000 - + ↔ FINE HONE 000 - +
PROSPER HECKNY H
Prvotna Prvotna Presenta Prvotna Prvot
ARRICE SENSOR SYSTEM

 \rightarrow The General settings screen appears.



language.

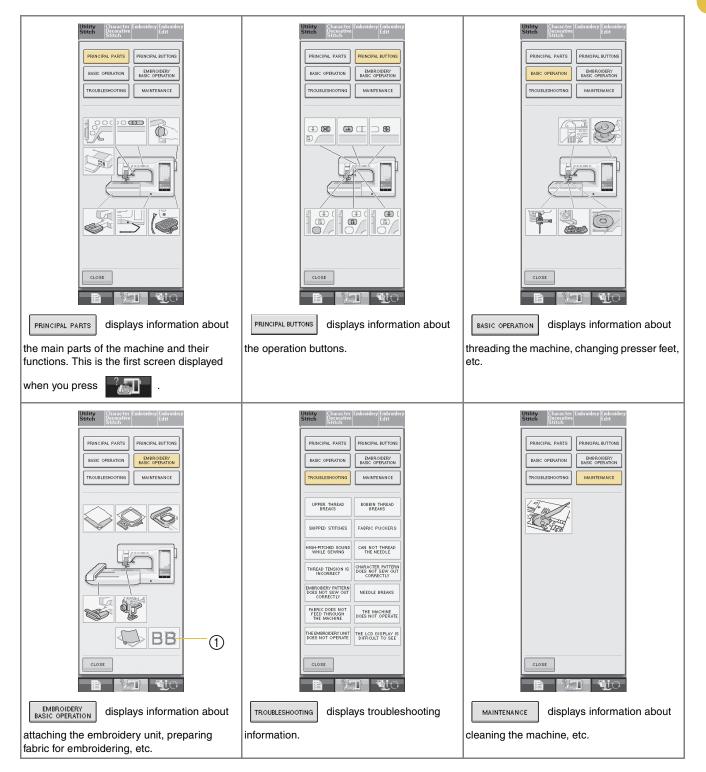
* Choose from the following languages: [ENGLISH], [GERMAN], [FRENCH], [ITALIAN], [DUTCH], [SPANISH], [JAPANESE], [DANISH], [NORWEGIAN], [FINNISH], [SWEDISH], [PORTUGEUSE] or [RUSSIAN].



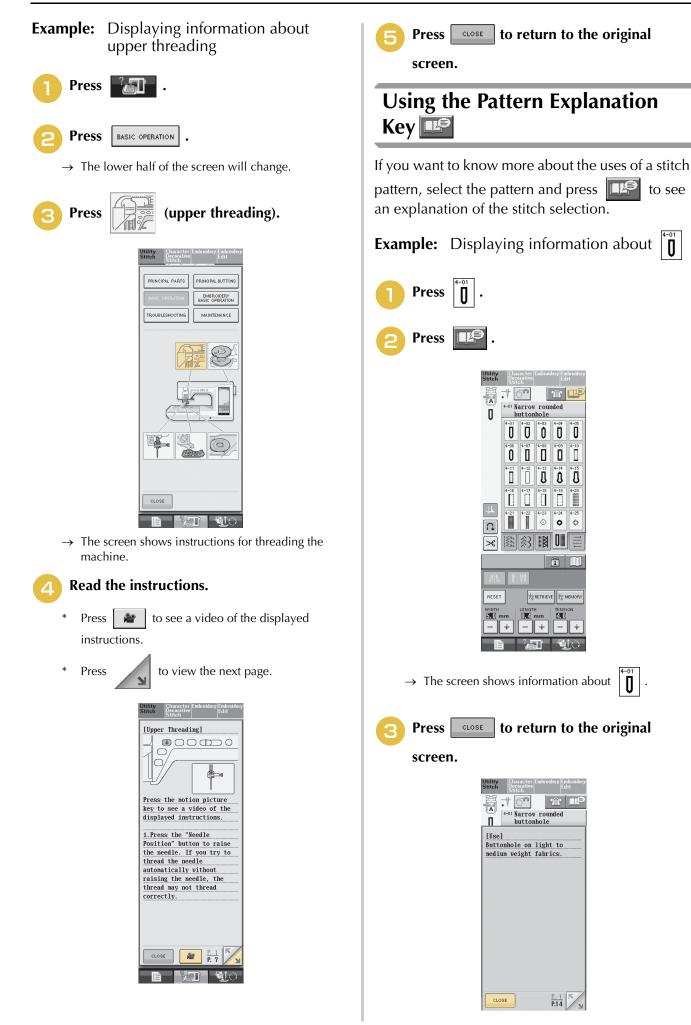
Δ

Using the Machine Operation Mode Key

Press **Figure** to open the screen shown below. Six categories are displayed at the top of the screen. Press a key to see more information about that category.



① Adjusting thread tension information

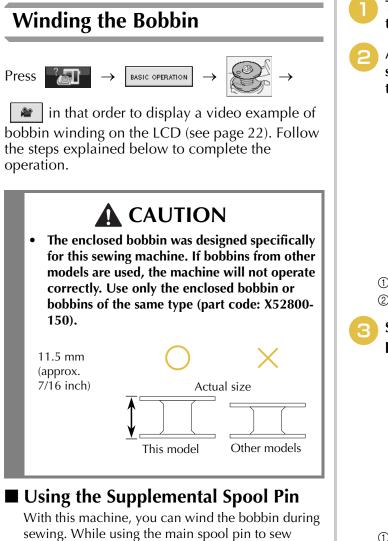


0

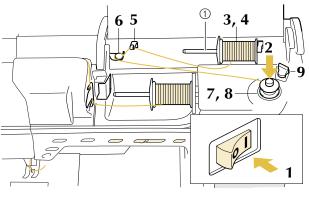
to see

22

LOWER THREADING

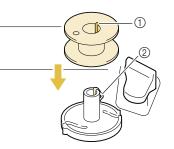


With this machine, you can wind the bobbin during sewing. While using the main spool pin to sew embroidery, you can conveniently wind the bobbin using the supplemental spool pin.



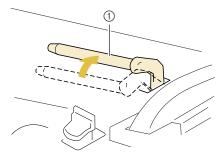
① Supplemental spool pin

- Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.
- Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



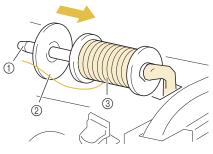
- ① Groove of the bobbin
- ② Spring on the shaft

Set the supplemental spool pin in the "up" position.



① Supplemental spool pin

4 Place the spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that thread unrolls from the front. Then push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.



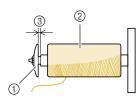
- ① Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool

CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin, the thread will wind uneven on the bobbin and eventually cause damage to the machine.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause damage to the machine.

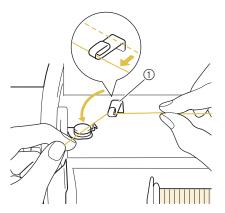
א Memo

 When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.



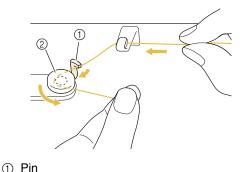
- ① Spool cap (small)
- ② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
- ③ Space

With your right hand, hold the thread near the thread spool. With your left hand, hold the end of the thread, and use both hands to pass the thread through the thread guide.

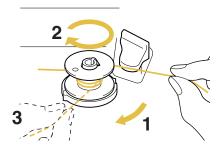


① Thread guide

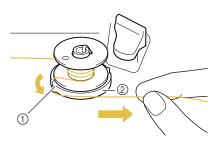
6 Pass the thread under the pin, and pass the thread around the pretension disk making sure that the thread is under the pretension disk.



- Pretension disk
- Wind the thread clockwise around the bobbin 5-6 times.

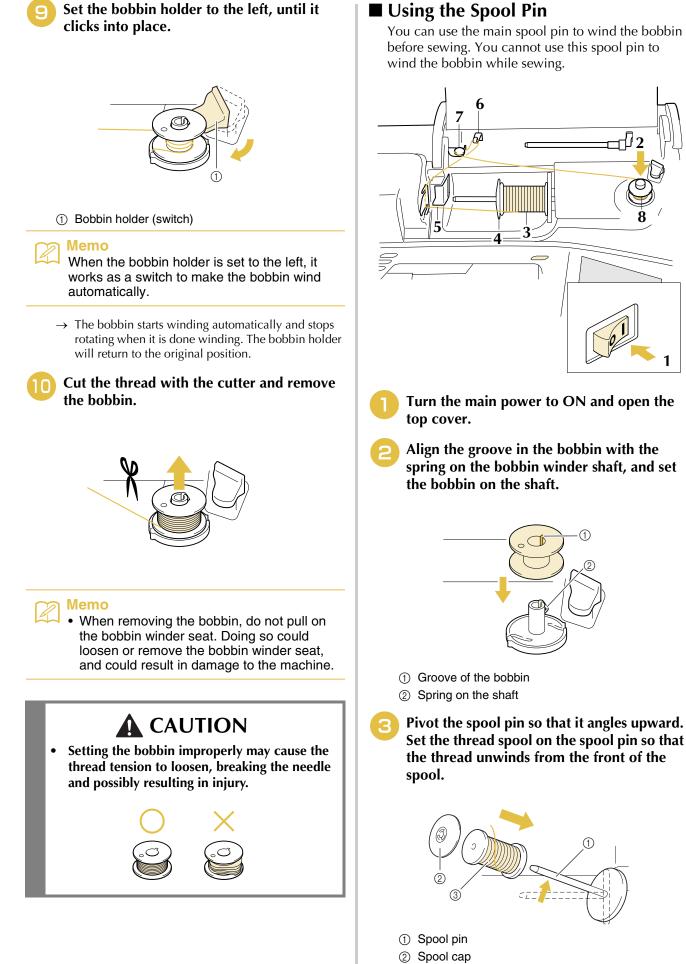


Pass the end of the thread through the guide slit in the bobbin winder seat, and pull the thread to the right to cut the thread with the cutter.



Guide slit (with built-in cutter)
 Bobbin winder seat

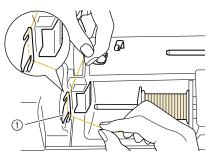
• Be sure to follow the process described. If the thread is not cut with the cutter, and the bobbin is wound, when the thread runs low it may tangle around the bobbin and cause the needle to break.



③ Thread spool

1

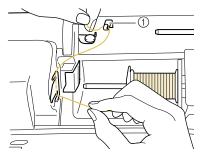
- Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.
- 5 Holding the thread with your hands, slide the thread into the grooves on the thread guide plate.



① Thread guide plate



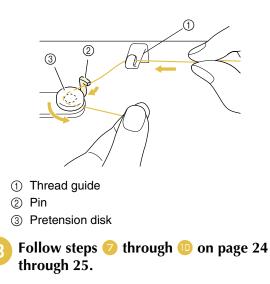
Pass the thread through the thread guide.



① Thread guide



Pass the thread under the pin. Then pass the thread around the pretension disk making sure that the thread is under the pretension disk.



Setting the Bobbin



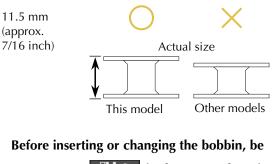
in that order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 22). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.



• Use a bobbin thread that has been correctly wound. Otherwise, the needle may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.



• The enclosed bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the enclosed bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: X52800-150).

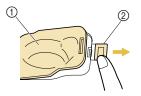


sure to press with the LCD, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.

Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.



Slide the bobbin cover latch to the right.



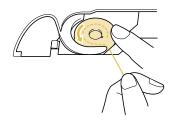
- ① Bobbin cover
- ② Latch
- \rightarrow The bobbin cover opens.
- 3

Remove the bobbin cover.

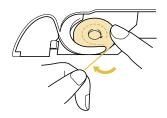
Hold the bobbin with your right hand and hold the end of the thread with your left hand.



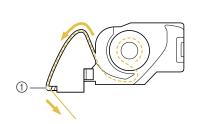
5 Set the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds to the left.



6 Hold the bobbin lightly with your right hand, and then guide the thread with your left hand.



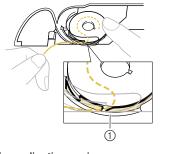
Pass the thread through the guide, and then pull the thread out towards the front.



- ① Cutter
- \rightarrow The cutter cuts the thread.

ソン Note

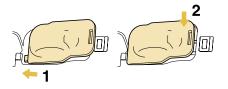
A Make sure that the thread is correctly inserted through the tension-adjusting spring of the bobbin case. If it is not inserted correctly, reinsert the thread.



① Tension-adjusting spring

CAUTION

- Be sure to hold down the bobbin with your finger and unwind the bobbin thread correctly. Otherwise, the thread may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.
- Insert the tab in the lower-left corner of the bobbin cover (1), and then lightly press down on the right side to close the cover (2).



Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread

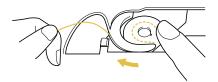
There may be some sewing applications where you want to pull up the bobbin thread; for example, when making gathers, darts, or doing free motion quilting or embroidery.

🎢 Memo

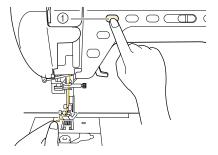
You can pull up the bobbin thread after threading the upper thread (see "UPPER THREADING" on page 29).

Guide the bobbin thread through the groove, following the arrow in the illustration.

- * Do not cut the thread with the cutter.
- * Do not replace the bobbin cover.

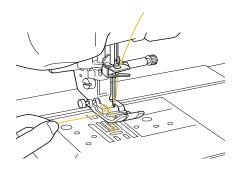


While holding the upper thread, press the needle position button to lower the needle.

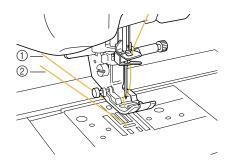


① Needle position button

- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- Gently pull the upper thread, and a loop of the bobbin thread will come out of the hole in the needle plate.

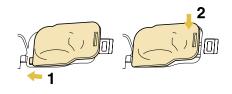


5 Pull up the bobbin thread, then pass it under the presser foot and pull it about 100 mm (approx. 3-4 inches) toward the back of the machine, making it even with the upper thread.



- ① Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread

Beplace the bobbin cover.



UPPER THREADING

Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button



BASIC OPERATION

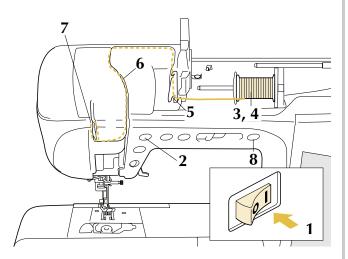
in that order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 22). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

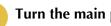
CAUTION

- Be sure to thread the machine properly. Improper threading can cause the thread to tangle and break the needle, leading to injury.
- When using accessories not included with this machine, attach the accessory to the machine after threading the machine.

Memo

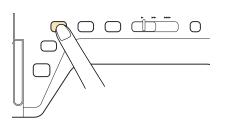
- The automatic threading function can be used with sewing machine needles 75/11 through 100/16.
- Thread such as transparent nylon monofilament thread and thread with a thickness of 130/20 or thicker cannot be used with the automatic threading function.
- · The automatic threading function cannot be used with the wing needle or the twin needle.
- If the automatic threading function cannot be used, see "Threading Manually" on page 31.





Turn the main power to ON.

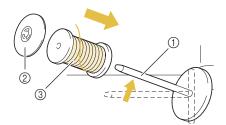
Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



Note

If you try to thread the needle automatically without raising the needle, the thread may not thread correctly.

Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.



- (1) Spool pin
- 2 Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool

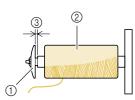
Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.

CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

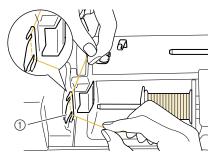
🆙 Memo

When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.

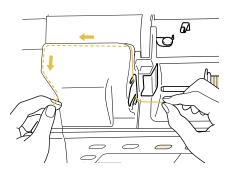


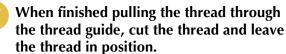
- ① Spool cap (small)
- ② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
- ③ Space

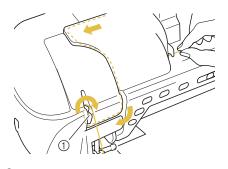
Holding the thread with your hands, slide the thread into the grooves on the thread guide plate.



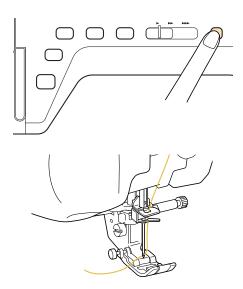
- ① Thread guide plate
- While holding the thread in your right hand, pass the thread through the thread guide in the direction indicated.







Press the "Automatic Threading" button to have the machine automatically thread the needle.



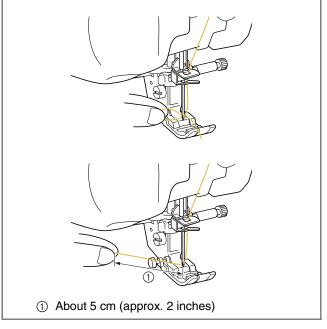
 \rightarrow The upper threading is finished.

河 Memo

When the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered.

_とNote

In case the needle is not completely threaded, slowly pull the loop of the thread through from the back of the needle.



🏹 Memo

If the needle could not be threaded or the thread was not passed through the needle bar thread guides, perform the procedure again starting from step ^(C).

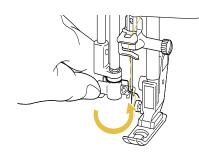
① Cutter



<mark>ヒ Note</mark>

When the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered.

If you are using an incorrect needle and thread combination, the hook may sometimes get caught in the needle. If this happens, remove the hook from the needle as described below.



A CAUTION

• The needle thread carrier will automatically thread the needle when the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed. Be sure to keep your hands and other items away from the needle area, otherwise injuries may occur.

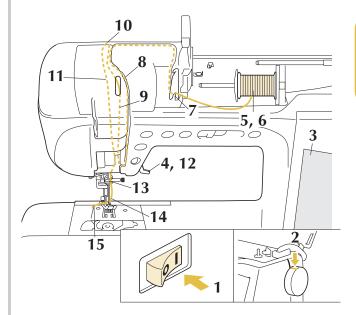
Threading Manually

Automatic threading cannot be used when using the wing needle, the twin needle, or special thread with a thickness of 130/20 or thicker. In these cases, thread the needle as described below.

CAUTION

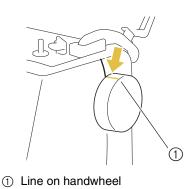
• Before manually threading the machine, be

sure to press in the LCD, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.





- Turn the main power to ON.
- Turn the handwheel so that the line on the machine is aligned with the line on the handwheel.



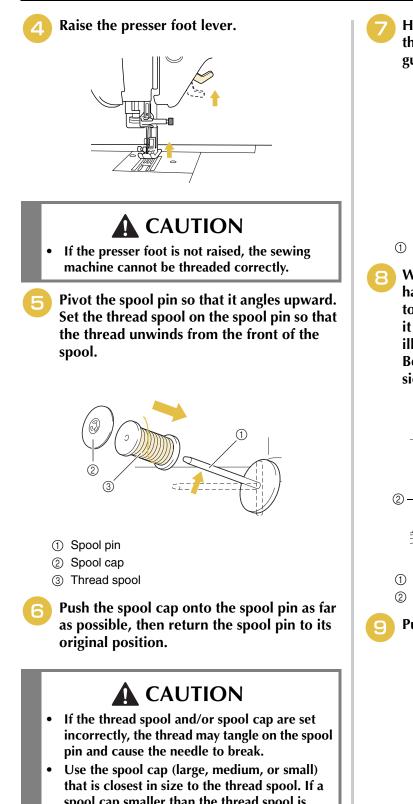
n Memo

If the line on the machine is not aligned with the line on the handwheel, the sewing machine cannot be threaded. Check that the line on the handwheel is facing up as shown in the illustration above.

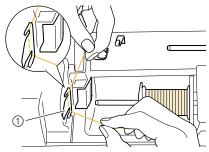
Press with at the lower right of the LCD

screen.

→ The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.



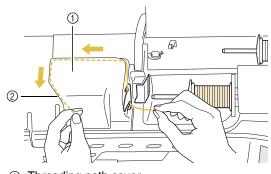
that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break. Holding the thread with both hands, slide the thread into the grooves on the thread guide plate.



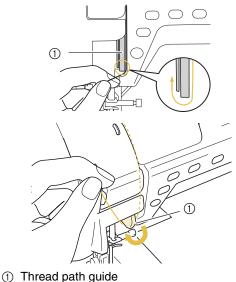
① Thread guide plate

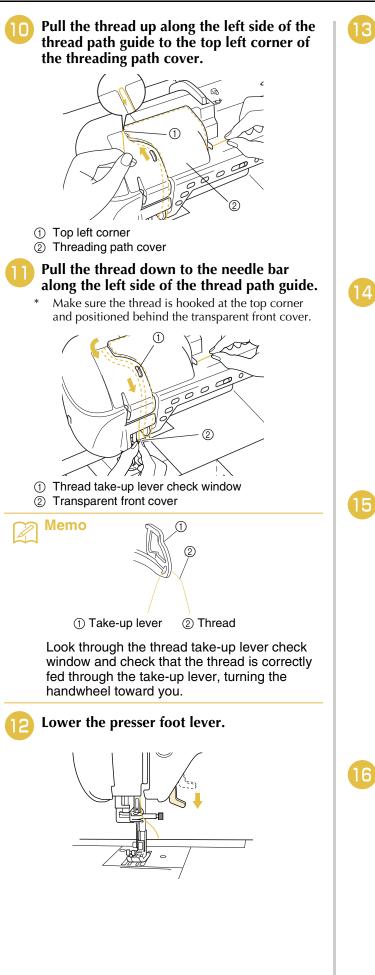
While holding the thread in your right hand, use your left hand to pull the thread toward the threading path cover, then pass it along the thread path as shown in the illustration.

Be sure to pass the thread along the right side of the thread path guide.

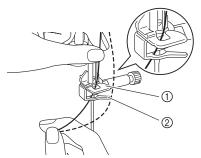


- ① Threading path cover
- ② Thread path guide
- Pull the thread under the thread path guide.



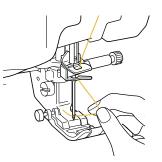


B Holding the thread with both hands, pass the thread through both the upper and lower needle bar thread guides.

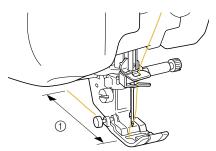


- Needle bar thread guide (upper)
- ② Needle bar thread guide (lower)

Pass the thread through the eye of the needle from front to back.



5 Pass the thread through the presser foot, and then pull out about 100-150 mm (approx. 4-6 inches) of thread toward the back of the machine.



- ① 10 cm-15 cm (approx. 4-6 inches)
- Press **W** to unlock all keys and buttons.

Using the Twin Needle Mode

The twin needle can only be used for patterns that

0 00after being selected. Before you show

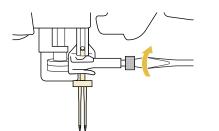
select a stitch pattern, make sure the stitch can be sewn in the twin needle mode (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual).

CAUTION

- Use only twin needles made for this machine (part code X59296-151). Other needles could break, resulting in damage.
- Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.
- Do not sew with bent needles. The needle could break and cause injury.
- When using the twin needle, be sure to use presser foot "J".
- When the twin needle is used, bunched stitches may occur depending on the types of fabric and thread that are used. If this occurs, use monogramming foot "N".
- Before changing the needle or threading the

machine, be sure to press LCD, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.

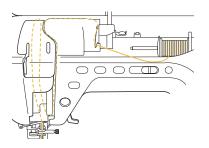
Press with and install the twin needle (see "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page 39).





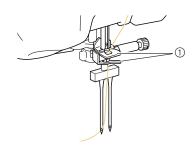
Manually thread the machine.

Follow the steps for threading a single needle for the first threading (see "Threading Manually" on page 31).





Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guides on the needle bar, then thread the needle on the left side.

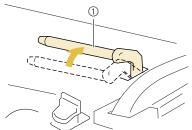


(1) Needle bar thread guides

Note The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Manually thread the twin needle from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.

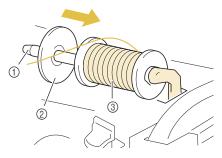


Pull up the supplemental spool pin and set it in the up position.



(1) Supplemental spool pin

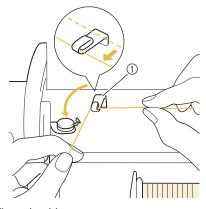
Place the additional spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that the thread unwinds from the back. Then push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.



① Spool pin

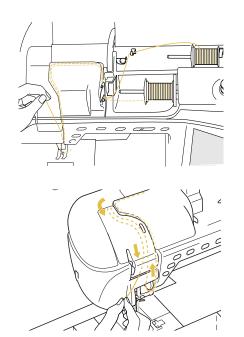
5

- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool
- Hold the thread from the spool with both hands, and place the thread in the thread guide.
 - * Do not place the thread in the bobbin winding thread guide.

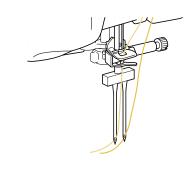


① Thread guide

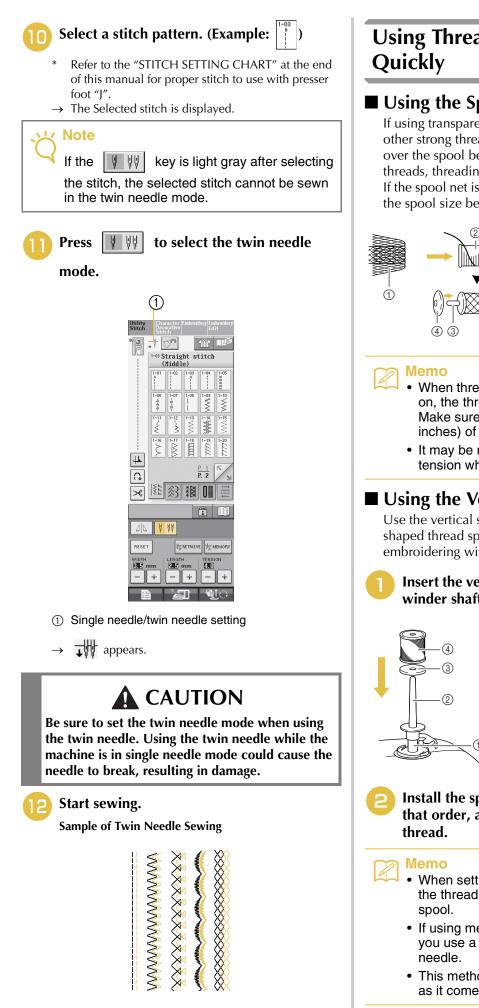
Pass the thread through the thread guide plate, following the sequence as described below (or refer to "Threading Manually" on page 31).



Do not pass the thread in the needle bar thread guides on the needle bar. Thread the needle on the right side.



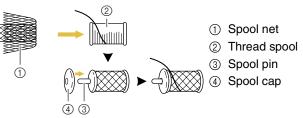




Using Threads that Unwind

Using the Spool Net

If using transparent nylon thread, metallic thread, or other strong thread, place the included spool net over the spool before using it. When using these threads, threading must be done manually. If the spool net is too long, fold it once to match it to the spool size before placing it over the spool.

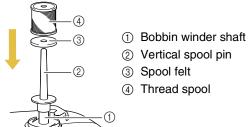


- When threading the spool with the spool net on, the thread may not come out enough. Make sure that 5-6 cm (approx. 2 - 2-1/2 inches) of thread are pulled out.
 - It may be necessary to adjust the thread tension when using the spool net.

Using the Vertical Spool Pin

Use the vertical spool pin when using an irregularly shaped thread spool, and when sewing or embroidering with metallic thread.

Insert the vertical spool pin onto the bobbin winder shaft.



Install the spool felt and the thread spool in that order, and then thread the upper

- When setting the thread spool, set it so that the thread winds off from the front of the
- If using metallic thread, we recommend that you use a 90/14 home sewing machine
- This method keeps the thread from twisting as it comes off the spool pin.

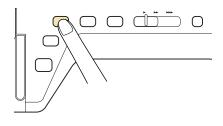
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT

CAUTION

- Always press on the screen before changing the presser foot. If is not pressed and the "Start/Stop" button or another button is pressed, the machine will start and may cause injury.
- Always use the correct presser foot for the selected stitch pattern. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, and may cause injury.
- Only use presser feet made for this machine. Using other presser feet may lead to accident or injury.

Removing the Presser Foot

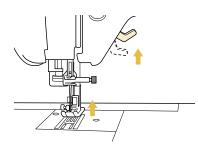
Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



- 2 Press 📲 .
 - * If "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.
 - → The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

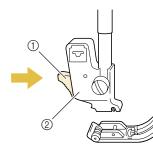


Raise the presser foot lever.





Press the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



- ① Black button
- ② Presser foot holder

Attaching the Presser Foot

CAUTION

- Make sure that the presser foot is installed in the correct direction, otherwise the needle may strike the presser foot, breaking the needle and causing injuries.
- Place the new presser foot under the holder, aligning the foot pin with the notch in the holder. Lower the presser foot lever so that the presser foot pin snaps into the notch in the holder.



to unlock all keys and

Notch
 Pin



buttons.

Raise the presser foot lever.

Attaching the Walking Foot

The walking foot holds the fabric between the presser foot and the feed dogs to feed the fabric. This enables you to have better fabric control when sewing difficult fabrics (such as quilting or velvet) or fabrics that slip easily (such as vinyl cloth, leather, or synthetic leather).

냊 Note

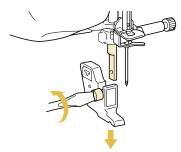
• When sewing with the walking foot, sew at medium to low speeds.

Memo

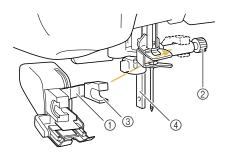
 The walking foot can only be used with straight or zigzag stitch patterns. Reverse stitches cannot be sewn with the walking foot. Only select straight or zigzag stitch patterns with reinforcement stitches.

Follow the steps in "Removing the Presser Foot" on the previous page.

Loosen the screw of the presser foot holder to remove the presser foot holder.

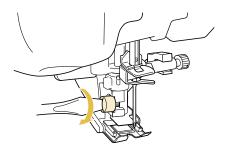


Set the operation lever of the walking foot so that the needle clamp screw is set between the fork, and position the walking foot on the presser foot bar.



- ① Operation lever
- ② Needle clamp screw
- ③ Fork
- ④ Presser foot bar

4 Lower the presser foot lever. Insert the screw, and tighten the screw securely with the screwdriver.



- Use the included screwdriver to tighten the screw securely. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and cause injury.
- Be sure to turn the handwheel toward the front of the machine to check that the needle does not strike the presser foot. If the needle strikes the presser foot, injury may result.

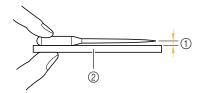
CHANGING THE NEEDLE

A CAUTION

- Always press with on the screen before changing the needle. If with is not pressed and the Start/ Stop button or another operation button is pressed accidentally, the machine will start and injury may result.
- Use only sewing machine needles made for home use-type 130/705H needle. Other needles may bend or break and may cause injury.
- Never sew with a bent needle. A bent needle will easily break and may cause injury.

Memo

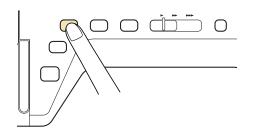
To check the needle correctly, place the flat side of the needle on a flat surface. Check the needle from the top and the sides. Throw away any bent needles.



① Parallel space

② Level surface (bobbin cover, glass, etc.)

Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

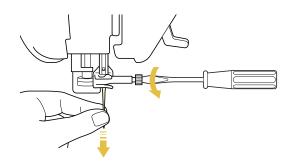


2 Press 📲 .

- * If "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.
- → The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

<mark>と、Note</mark>

 Before replacing the needle, cover the hole in the needle plate with fabric or paper to prevent the needle from falling into the machine. Use the screwdriver to turn the screw toward the front of the machine and loosen the screw, then remove the needle.

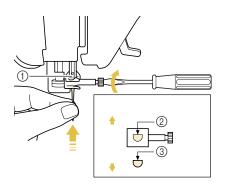


、 、 、 、 Note

 Do not apply pressure to the needle clamp screw. Doing so may damage the needle or machine.



4 With the flat side of the needle facing the back, insert the new needle all the way to the top of the needle stopper (viewing window) in the needle clamp. Use a screwdriver to securely tighten the needle clamp screw.



- ① Needle stopper
- ② Hole for setting the needle
- ③ Flat side of needle

CAUTION

• Be sure to push in the needle until it touches the stopper, and securely tighten the needle clamp screw with a screwdriver. If the needle is not completely inserted or the needle clamp screw is loose, the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

Press 10 unlock all keys and

buttons.

5

■ About the Needle

The sewing machine needle is probably the most important part of the sewing machine. Choosing the proper needle for your sewing project will result in a beautiful finish and fewer problems. Below are some things to keep in mind about needles.

- The smaller the needle number, the finer the needle. As the numbers increase, the needles get thicker.
- Use fine needles with lightweight fabrics, and thicker needles with heavyweight fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 with stretch fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 when sewing character or decorative stitches.
- Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. Use ball point needle HA \times 130 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters when the thread trimming function is turned on. Ball point needles (golden colored) 90/14 are not recommended for embroidery, as they may bend or break, causing injury.
- It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavyweight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example, denim, puffy foam, etc.). A 75/11 needle may bend or break, which could result in injury.
- A home sewing machine needle 75/11 is inserted in the sewing machine.

■ Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations

The following table provides information concerning the appropriate thread and needle for various fabrics. Please refer to this table when selecting a thread and needle for the fabric you wish to use.

Fabric		Thread		Size of needle	
		Туре	Size		
Medium weight fabric	Broadcloth	Cotton	60 - 80	75/11 - 90/14	
	Taffeta	Synthetic mercerized	60 - 80	7	
	Flannel, Gabardine	Silk or silk finished	50	7	
Lightweight fabric	Lawn, Batiste	Cotton	60 - 80	65/9 - 75/11	
	Georgette	Synthetic mercerized	60 - 80	1	
	Challis, Satin	Silk	50	7	
Heavyweight fabric	Denim	Cotton	30 - 50	90/14 - 100/16	
	Corduroy	Synthetic mercerized	50	7	
	Tweed	Silk	50	7	
Stretch fabric	Jersey	Thread for knits	50 - 60	Ball point needle	
	Tricot			(golden colored) 75/11 - 90/14	
Easily frayed fabrics		Cotton thread	50 - 80	65/9 - 90/14	
		Synthetic thread			
		Silk thread	50	7	
For top stitching		Synthetic mercerized	30	90/14 - 100/16	
		Silk	30	1	

א Memo

For transparent nylon thread, always use needle 90/14 - 100/16.

The same thread is usually used for the bobbin thread and upper threading.

CAUTION

• Be sure to follow the needle, thread, and fabric combinations listed in the table. Using an improper combination, especially a heavyweight fabric (i.e., denim) with a small needle (i.e., 65/9 - 75/11), may cause the needle to bend or break, and lead to injury. Also, the seam may be uneven, the fabric may pucker, or the machine may skip stitches.



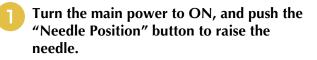
Chapter 2 Sewing Basics

SEWING

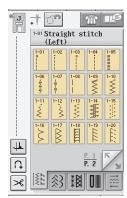
CAUTION

- To avoid injury, pay special attention to the needle while the machine is in operation. Keep your hands away from moving parts while the machine is in operation.
- Do not stretch or pull the fabric during sewing. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Do not use bent or broken needles. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Take care that the needle does not strike basting pins or other objects during sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.
- If stitches become bunched, lengthen the stitch length setting before continuing sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

Sewing a Stitch



Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.



→ The symbol of the correct presser foot will be displayed in the upper left corner of the LCD.

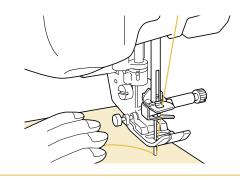


Install the presser foot (see "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 37).

A CAUTION

• Always use the correct presser foot. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, possibly resulting in injury.

4 Set the fabric under the presser foot. Hold the fabric and thread ends in your left hand, and turn the handwheel to set the needle in the sewing start position.



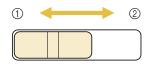
memo

The black button on the left side of presser foot "J" should be pressed only if the fabric does not feed or when sewing thick seams (see page 47). Normally, you can sew without pressing the black button.

- Lower the presser foot.
 - You do not have to pull up the bobbin thread.

Adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide.

* You can use this slide to adjust sewing speed during sewing.

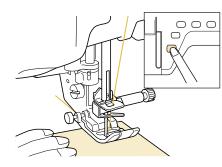


Slow
 Fast



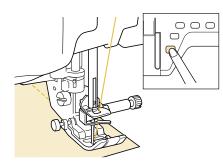
Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.

* Guide the fabric lightly by hand.

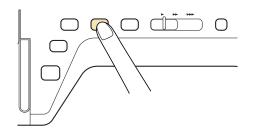




Press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop sewing.



Press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.



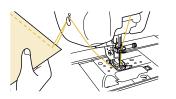
→ The needle will return to the up position automatically.

CAUTION

- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button after the threads have been cut. Doing so could tangle the thread or break the needle and damage the machine.
- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button when there is no fabric set in the machine or during machine operation. The thread may tangle, possibly resulting in damage.

₩ Note

 When cutting thread thicker than #30, nylon thread, or other decorative threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine.



When the needle has stopped moving, raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.

河 Memo

This machine is equipped with a bobbin thread sensor that warns you when the bobbin thread is almost empty. When the bobbin thread is nearly empty, the machine automatically stops. However, if the "Start/Stop" button is pressed, a few stitches can be sewn. If the warning displays, re-thread the machine immediately.

■ Using the Foot Controller

You can also use the foot controller to start and stop sewing.

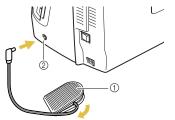
CAUTION

Do not allow fabric pieces and dust to collect in the foot controller. Doing so could cause a fire or an electric shock.

🎢 Memo

- When the foot controller is being used, the "Start/Stop" button has no effect on sewing.
 - The foot controller cannot be used when embroidering. The foot controller can be used for sewing utility and decorative stitches when the embroidery unit is attached.

Pull the retractable cord out from the foot controller to the desired length, and then insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.



- ① Foot controller
- Foot controller jack

、 、 、 Note

Do not pull retractable cord out beyond the red mark.



Slowly depress the foot controller to start sewing.



🔊 Memo

The speed set using the sewing speed controller is the foot controller's maximum sewing speed.



Release the foot controller to stop the machine.

Memo

(For U.S.A. only) Foot controller: Model S This foot controller can be used with models: BLG2-NZ/BLG2

Sewing Reinforcement Stitches

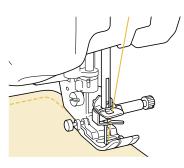
Reverse/reinforcement stitches are generally necessary at the beginning and end of sewing. You can use the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse/reinforcement stitches manually (see page 3).

If the automatic reinforcement stitch is selected on the screen, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) automatically at the end of sewing (see page 51).



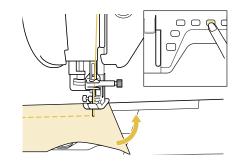
Sewing Curves

Sew slowly while keeping the seam parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



Changing Sewing Direction

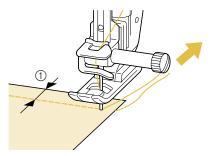
Stop the machine. Leave the needle in the fabric, and press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot. Using the needle as a pivot, turn the fabric so that you can sew in the new direction. Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.



The pivot setting is useful when changing the sewing direction. When the machine is stopped at the corner of the fabric, the machine stops with the needle in the fabric and the presser foot is automatically raised so the fabric can easily be rotated (see "Pivoting" on page 53).

Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less

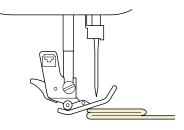
Baste the corner before sewing, and then, after changing the sewing direction at the corner, pull the basting thread toward the back while sewing.



① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics

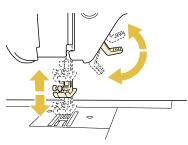
The sewing machine can sew fabrics up to 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick. If the thickness of a seam causes sewing to occur at an angle, help guide the fabric by hand and sew on the downward slope.



• Do not forcefully push fabrics more than 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick through the sewing machine. This may cause the needle to break and cause injury.

■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot

If the presser foot is in the up position, and you are sewing heavyweight or multiple layers of fabric which do not fit easily under the presser foot, use the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot to its highest position. The fabric will now fit under the presser foot.



Memo

You cannot use the presser foot lever after the presser foot has been raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.

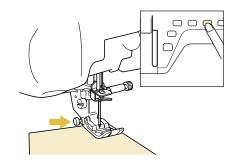
■ If the Fabric does not Feed

If the fabric does not feed when starting to sew or when sewing thick seams, press the black button on the left side of presser foot "J".



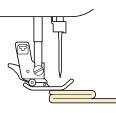
Raise the presser foot.

While keeping the black button on the left side of presser foot "J" pressed in, press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.





Release the button.



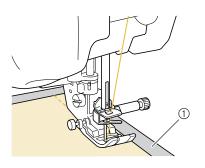
→ The presser foot remains level, enabling the fabric to be fed.

n Memo

- Once the trouble spot has been passed, the foot will return to its normal position.
- When "AUTOMATIC FABRIC SENSOR SYSTEM" (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure) in the machine settings screen is set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by the internal sensor so the fabric can be fed smoothly for best sewing results. (See page 55 for details.)

Sewing Lightweight Fabrics

Place thin paper or tear away embroidery stabilizer under thin fabrics to make sewing easier. Gently tear off the paper or the stabilizer after sewing.



① Thin paper

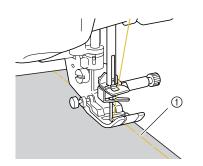
Sewing Stretch Fabrics

First, baste together the pieces of fabric, and then sew without stretching the fabric.

In addition, a better result can be achieved by using thread for knits or a stretch stitch.

memo

• For best results when sewing stretch fabrics, decrease the pressure of the presser foot.



① Basting stitching

STITCH SETTINGS

When you select a stitch, your machine automatically selects the appropriate stitch width, stitch length, and upper thread tension. However, if needed, you can change any of the individual settings.

K Note

- Settings for some stitches cannot be changed (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual).
- If you turn off the machine or select another stitch without saving stitch setting changes (see "Saving Your Stitch Settings" on page 60), the stitch settings will return to their default settings.

Setting the Stitch Width

Follow the steps below when you want to change the zigzag stitch pattern width.



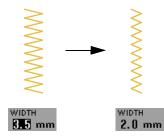
🆙 Memo

• For an alternate method of changing the stitch width using the speed controller, see page 82.

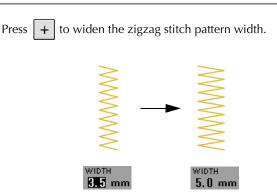
Example:



- to narrow the zigzag stitch pattern width.



 \rightarrow The value in the display gets smaller.



 \rightarrow The value in the display gets bigger.

Memo

• Press **RESET** to return the stitch width to the original setting.

y Note

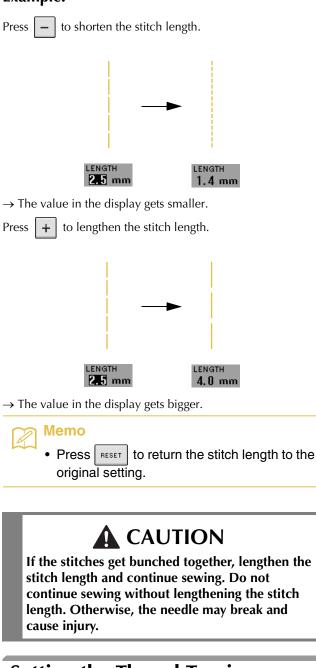
After adjusting the stitch width, slowly turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

Setting the Stitch Length

Follow the steps below when you want to change the stitch pattern length.

	44
RESET	
WIDTH 0.0 mm	LENGTH TENSION
-+	<mark>- +</mark> - +

Example:



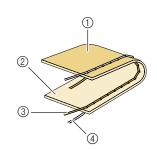
Setting the Thread Tension

You may need to change the thread tension, depending on the fabric and thread being used. Follow the steps below to make any necessary changes.



Proper Thread Tension

The upper and lower threads should cross near the center of the fabric. If the thread tension is not properly set, the seam may have a poor finish or the fabric may pucker.

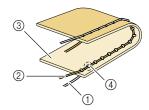


- ① Wrong side
- Surface
- ③ Upper thread
- ④ Bobbin thread

■ Upper Thread is Too Tight

If the bobbin thread can be seen on the surface of

the fabric, press –

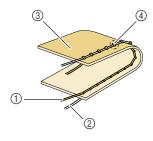


- ① Bobbin thread
- ② Upper thread
- ③ Surface
- ④ Locks appear on surface of fabric

■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

If the upper thread can be seen on the wrong side of

the fabric, press + .



- ① Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- 3 Wrong side
- 4 Locks appear on wrong side of fabric

🏹 Memo

• Press **RESET** to return the thread tension to the original setting.

USEFUL FUNCTIONS

Automatic Reinforcement Stitching

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing.

Select a stitch pattern.

Press \bigcap to set the automatic

reinforcement stitching function.



 \rightarrow The key will display as 11

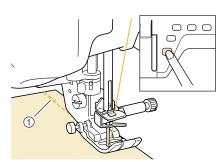
Memo

Some stitches, such as buttonholes and bar tacks, require reinforcement stitches at the beginning of sewing. If you select one of these stitches, the machine will automatically turn on

this function (the key appears as the stitch is selected).



Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



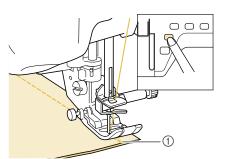
- 2 Sewing Basics
- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- \rightarrow The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.



If you press the "Start/Stop" button to pause sewing, press it again to continue. The machine will not sew reverse reinforcement stitches again.



Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.



- (1) Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- \rightarrow The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and stop.

Memo

when

To turn off the automatic reinforcement

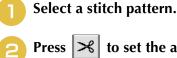
stitching function, press

again, so it

appears as 11

Automatic Thread Cutting

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic thread cutting function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing, and trim the threads at the end of sewing. This function is useful when sewing buttonholes and bar tacks.



Press $|\gg|$ to set the automatic thread

cutting function.

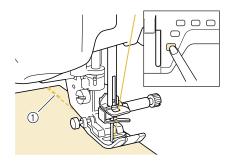


 \rightarrow The key will display as >

Memo

This function is set automatically when sewing embroidery.

Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



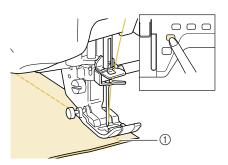
- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- \rightarrow The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

Memo

If you press the "Start/Stop" button to pause sewing, press the same button again to continue. The beginning reverse/ reinforcement stitches will not be sewn again.



Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitching" button.



- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- \rightarrow The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches), then trim the thread.

Memo

≫∣.

To turn off the automatic thread cutting



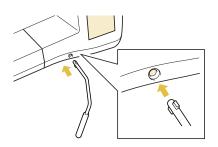
function, press again, so it appears as

■ Using the Knee Lifter

Using the knee lifter, you can raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric.



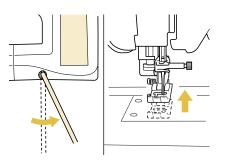
Align the tabs on the knee lifter with the notches in the jack, and then insert the knee lifter as far as possible.



Note

If the knee lifter is not pushed into the mounting slot as far as possible, it may come out during use.

Use your knee to move the knee lifter to the right in order to raise the presser foot. Release the knee lifter to lower the presser foot.



CAUTION

Be sure to keep your knee away from the knee lifter during sewing. If the knee lifter is pushed during machine operation, the needle may break or the thread tension may loosen.

Pivoting

If the pivot setting is selected, the machine stops with the needle lowered (in the fabric) and the presser foot is automatically raised to an appropriate height when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. When the "Start/Stop" button is pressed again, the presser foot is automatically lowered and sewing continues. This function is useful for stopping the machine to rotate the fabric.

CAUTION

• When the pivot setting is selected, the machine starts when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed or the foot controller is pressed down even if the presser foot has been raised. Be sure to keep your hands and other items away from the needle, otherwise injuries may occur.

א Memo

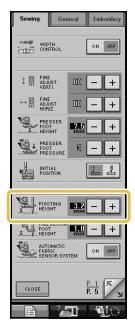
When the pivot setting is selected, the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped can be changed according to the type of fabric

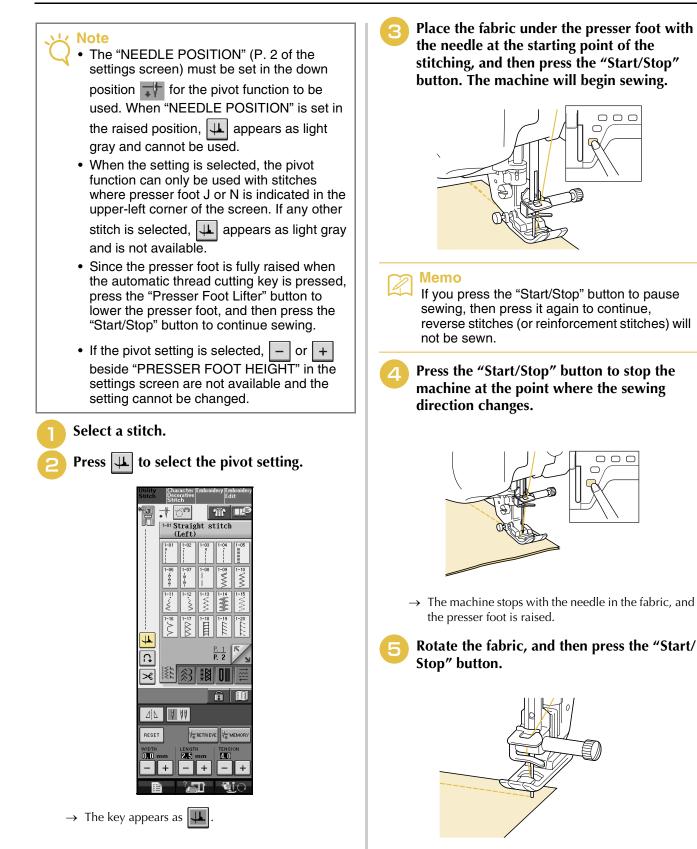
being sewn. Press

"PIVOTING HEIGHT" on P. 1 of the settings

screen. Press - or + to select one of the

three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm or 7.5 mm). To raise the presser foot further, increase the setting. (Normally, 3.2 mm is set.)

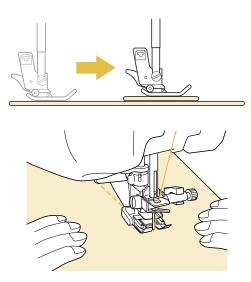




 $\rightarrow\,$ The presser foot is automatically lowered, and sewing continues.

Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure)

The thickness of the fabric is automatically detected and the presser foot pressure is automatically adjusted with an internal sensor while sewing, so your fabric is fed smoothly. The fabric sensor system works continuously while sewing. This function is useful for sewing over thick seams (see page 47), or quilting (see page 80).







Set "AUTOMATIC FABRIC SENSOR SYSTEM" to "ON".

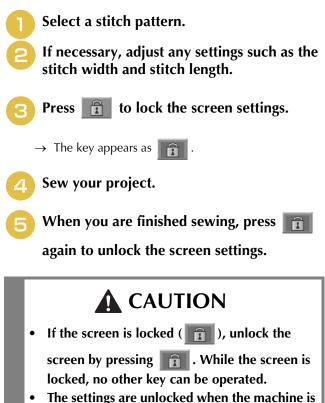
Sewing Ger	neral	Emb	roidery
CONTROL		ON	OFF
Ĵ III FINE ADJUST VERTI.	00	_	+
↔ III FINE ADJUST HORIZ.	Ξ	_	+
PRESSER FOOT HEIGHT	7.5 mm	-	+
PRESSER FOOT PRESSURE	8	_	+
INITIAL POSITION		L	Ł
	<u>3.2</u>	_	+
FREE MOTION	1.0	-	+
AUTOMATIC FABRIC SENSOR SYS	STEM	ON	OFF
CLOSE		<u>P. 1</u> P. 5	۲ ۲
	.		.l.O

3) I

Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen.

Locking the Screen

If the screen is locked before starting to sew, the various settings such as the stitch width and stitch length are locked and cannot be changed. This prevents screen settings from accidentally being changed or the machine from being stopped while large pieces of fabric or projects are being sewn. The screen can be locked when sewing utility stitches and character decorative stitches.



turned off and on.



Chapter **3** Utility Stitches

• •	titch Selection Screens
	ting a Stitch
	Jsing the Mirror Image Key
	Jsing the Image Key
	g Your Stitch Settings 60
	Saving Settings
	Retrieving Saved Settings
	NG THE STITCHES63
	th Stitches
-	Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle
	Position Stitches Only)
	Needle Plate and Needle Plate Cover Marks
	Jsing the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot 65
	Basting
	ering
	0
	ell Seam
	ck 69
	g Stitches71
	Dvercasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
	Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
	Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
	Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
	c Zigzag Stitches73
	Tape Attaching
	Dvercasting
	Dvercasting Using Presser Foot "G"
	Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J"
	Overcasting Using the Optional Side Cutter
	When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cutter 78
	ing
	Cuilting
	Appliqué81
	Quilting with Satin Stitches
	ree-motion Quilting
	Hem Stitches
	f the Needle does not Catch the Fold
	f the Needle Catches Too Much of the Fold
	qué 90
	Sewing Sharp Curves
	tuck Stitches
Scall	op Stitches
Top S	titching
Smoo	king Stitches
Fagot	ing
	or Elastic Attaching
•	oom
	Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)
	Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1))
	Hemstitching (3) (Drawn Work (2))

One-step Buttonholes	97
Sewing Stretch Fabrics	100
Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do not Fit into	
the Button Holder Plate	
Four-step Buttonholes	101
Darning	103
Bar Tacks	105
Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics	106
Button Sewing	107
Attaching 4 Hole Buttons	108
Attaching a Shank to the Button	108
Eyelet	109
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch)	110
Zipper Insertion	111
Centered Zipper	111
Inserting a Side Zipper	

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES

Stitch Selection Screens

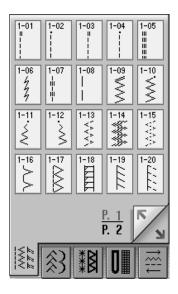
There are 5 categories of Utility Stitches.

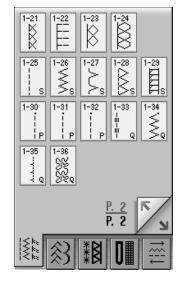
for that category.



indicates that there is more than one stitch selection screen

Straight/Overcasting/Quilting Stitches

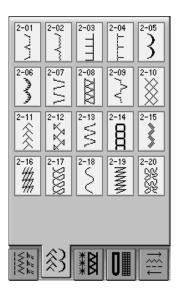




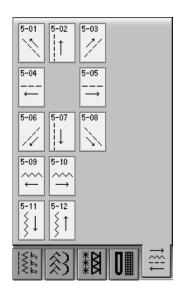
Buttonholes/Bar tacks

4-01 D	⁴⁻⁰²	4-03 0	4-04 0	4-05 D
4-06 0	4-07 1	⁴⁻⁰⁸	4-09	4-10
4-11	4-12	4-13 J	4-14)	⁴⁻¹⁵
4-16	4-17	4-18 []	4-19	4-20 INNN UUUU
4-21	4-22	4-23 ⊙	4-24 O	4-25 310 310
<u>~~~</u>	<u>&</u>	*8		

Decorative Stitches



Multi-directional Sewing



Heirloom Stitches

3-01	3-02 	3-03 MMM	3-04 E	3-05
3-06 * *	3-07 ♦₩	3-08	3-09	3-10
³⁻¹¹	³⁻¹²	³⁻¹³	3-14 XX XX	3-15
3-16 X X	3-17	[™] +++++	3-19	³⁻²⁰
3-21 2 4	3-22 7 5	3-23 4	3-24	³⁻²⁵
<u>~~~</u>	8	₩8		131

Selecting a Stitch



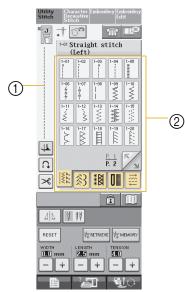
Turn the main power to ON.

→ Either "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is selected, depending on the setting selected in the setting screen.



category you want.

- Press Stitch to view this screen if another screen displays.
- Press to view the next page.



- (1) Preview of the selected stitch
- Stitch selection screen



Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.

Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Using the Mirror Image Key

Depending on the type of utility stitch you select, you may be able to sew a horizontal mirror image of the stitch.

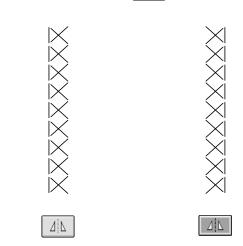
If $\square \square \square$ is lit when you select a stitch, it will be possible to make a mirror image of the stitch.

Note

If | 44 is light gray after you select a stitch, you cannot create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch (this is true of buttonholes, multi-directional sewing, and others).

Press $\square \square$ to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch.

The key will display as $\square \square$.



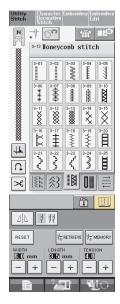
■ Using the Image Key

You can display an image of the selected stitch. You can also check and change the colors of the image on the screen.









 \rightarrow An image of the selected stitch is displayed.



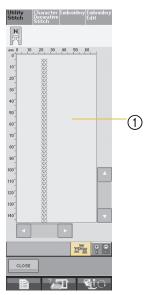
Press **I** to change the thread color of

the stitch on the screen.

Press **Press** to display an enlarged image of the stitch.

Memo K

- · The color changes every time you press Ē
- The units of the stitch display area are in mm.

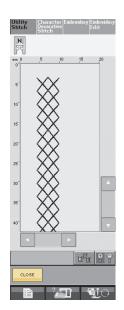


① Stitch screen



CLOSE to go back to the original

screen.



Saving Your Stitch Settings

The settings for the zigzag stitch width, stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting, automatic reinforcement stitching, etc., are preset in the machine for each stitch. However, if you have specific settings that you wish to reuse later for a stitch, you can change the settings so that they can be saved for that stitch. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch.

Saving Settings



Select a stitch. (Example:





Specify your preferred settings.





Press



→ The settings are saved and the original screen automatically appears.

ן Memo

If you try to save settings when there are already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, the message "The pockets are full. Delete a pattern" will appear. Close the message and refer to "Deleting Saved Settings" on this page.

Retrieving Saved Settings



Select a stitch.

א Memo

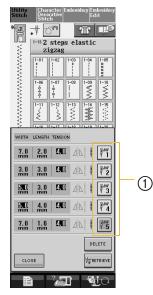
When a stitch is selected, the last settings retrieved are displayed. The last settings retrieved are retained even if the machine was turned off or a different stitch was selected.





3 Press the numbered key of the settings to be retrieved.

 Press cLOSE to return to the original screen without retrieving settings.



① Numbered keys

Press WW RETRIEVE .

→ The selected settings are retrieved, and the original screen automatically appears.

Memo

Deleting Saved Settings

You can delete the selected setting by press-

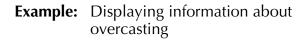
ing WERETRIEVE . Press the numbered key of the

setting to be deleted. Press DELETE , press

CLOSE and then **W** MEMORY . The new setting will be saved in place of the recently deleted setting.

Using the Sewing Type Selection Key

You can also select utility stitches using Use this key when you are not sure which stitch to use for your application, or to get advice about sewing particular stitches. For example, if you want to sew overcasting, but you do not know which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch, you can use this screen to get advice. We recommend that beginners use this method to select stitches.







 \rightarrow The advice screen is displayed.



*

Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.



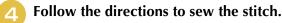
→ The upper part of the screen displays a selection of overcasting stitches with explanations.

3 Read the explanations and select the appropriate stitch.

* Press \bigstar or \clubsuit to scroll the page.

[Overcasting] Sewing select type
1-16: Thin and redium fabric 1-18: Medium stretch fabric 1-19: Stretch fabric 1-20: Thick and medium stretch fabric 1-21: Stretch fabric
CLOSE
WIDTH LENGTH TENSION 0.0 mm 2.5 mm 4.0 -++ -++ -+

 $\rightarrow\,$ The screen displays directions for sewing the selected stitch.





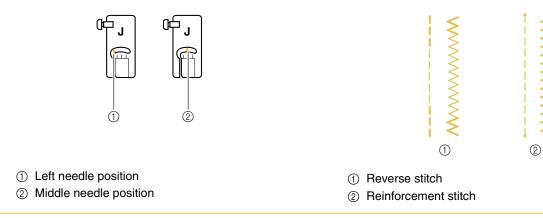
to view the next page.



SEWING THE STITCHES

Straight Stitches

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
1-01 	Straight stitch (Left)	۴J	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-02 i i i	Straight stitch (Left)	۴J	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-03 	Straight stitch (Middle)	ŧJ	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-04	Straight stitch (Middle)	ťJ	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-05 	Triple stretch stitch	۴J	General sewing for reinforcement and decorative topstitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	ОК (J)
1-06 4 7 7	Stem stitch	۴J	Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	1.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-07 	Decorative stitch	R	Decorative stitching, top stitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-08 	Basting stitch	۴J	Basting	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	20.0 (3/4)	5.0 - 30.0 (3/16 - 1-3/16)	NO



Memo

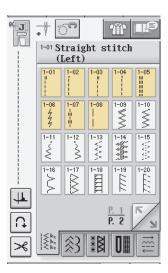
If the selected stitch has a double mark """ at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.

If the selected stitch has a dot mark " \cdot " at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (see page 46).

Ctility Stitches



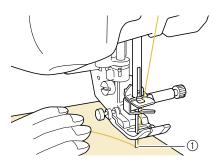
Select a stitch.





Attach presser foot "J".

- * Attach presser foot "N" when you select 📗 .
- Hold the thread tails and fabric with your left hand, and turn the handwheel with your right hand to insert the needle into the fabric.

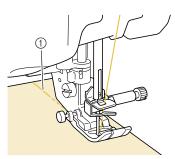


Sewing start position

Lower the presser foot, and hold the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 stitches.

→ The machine sews reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches).

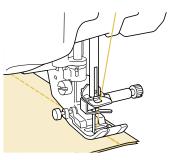
Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew forward.



CAUTION

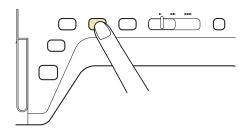
Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.

When sewing is completed, hold the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) at the end of the seam.





After sewing, press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.



න Memo

When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitch keys on the screen are selected, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.

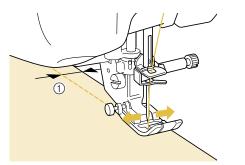
- ① Reverse stitches
- \rightarrow The machine will begin sewing slowly.

Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position Stitches Only)

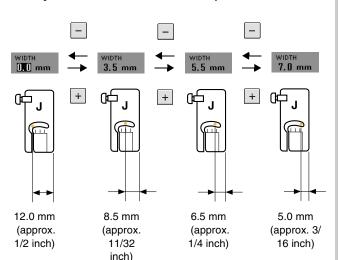
When you select left or middle needle position

stitches, you can use – and + in the stitch

width display to change the position of the needle. Match the distance from the right edge of the presser foot to the needle with the stitch width, then align the edge of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric during sewing for an attractive finish.



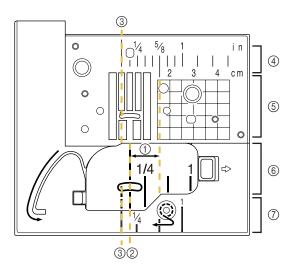
① Stitch width



Example: Left/Middle needle position stitches

Needle Plate and Needle Plate Cover Marks

For a standard 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) seam allowance, set the width to 0.0 mm on the screen. While sewing, align the edge of the fabric with the 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) mark on the needle plate.

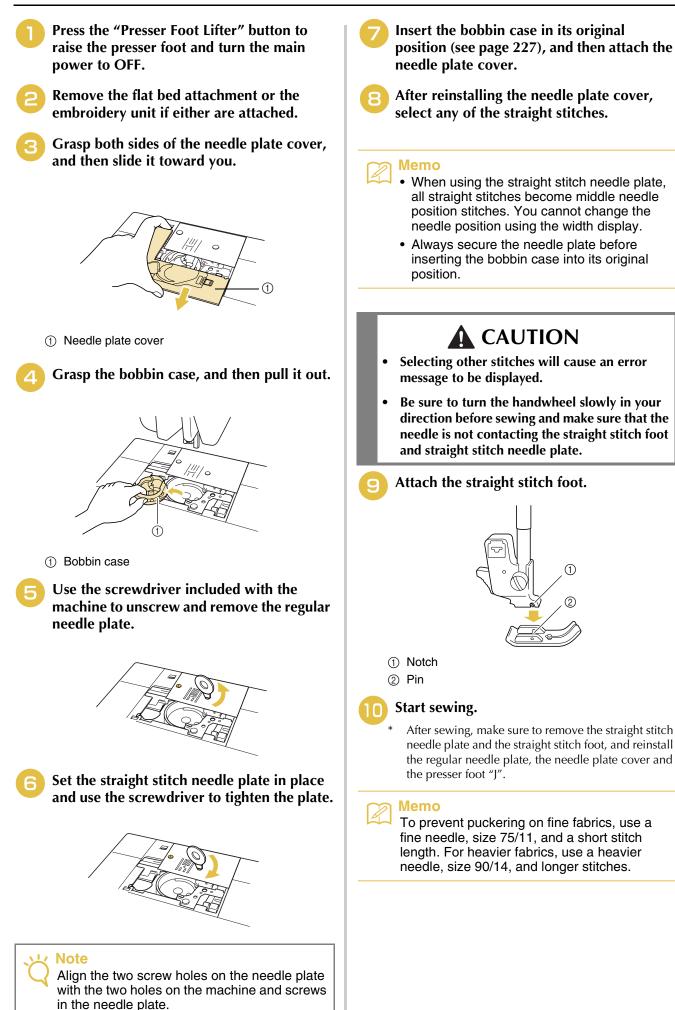


- ① 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch)
- ② For stitches with a middle (center) needle position
- ③ For stitches with a left needle position
- ④ Left needle position on the needle plate <inch>
- (5) Left needle position on the needle plate <cm>
- 6 Middle (center) needle position on the bobbin cover <inch>
- ⑦ Left needle position on the needle plate cover <inch>

Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot

The straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot can only be used for straight stitches (middle needle position stitches). Use the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot when sewing thin fabrics or when sewing small pieces which tend to sink into the hole of the regular needle plate during sewing. The straight stitch foot is perfect to reduce puckering on lightweight fabrics. The small opening on the foot provides support for the fabric as the needle goes through the fabric.

Always use the straight stitch foot in combination with the straight stitch needle plate.

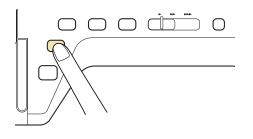


Basting



and attach presser foot "J".

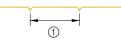
Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches, then continue sewing.



Memo 4

If you do not want to use a reinforcement stitch at the beginning; you should lift the presser foot, rotate the handwheel, pull up the bobbin thread and pull a length of top and bobbin thread out from the rear of the machine.

You can set the stitch length between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)



① Between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)





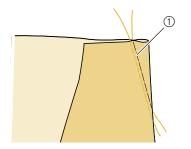
End the basting with reinforcement stitches.

Dart Seam



and attach presser foot "J".

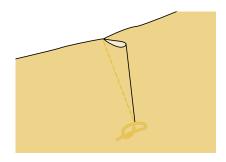
- Sew a reverse stitch at the beginning of the dart and then sew from the wide end to the other end without stretching the fabric.
 - If automatic reinforcement stitching is preset, a reinforcement stitch will automatically be sewn at the beginning of sewing.





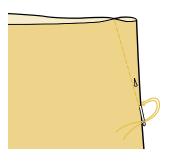
Cut the thread at the end leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches), and then tie both ends together.

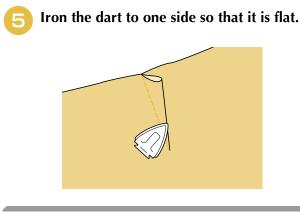
Do not sew a reverse stitch at the end.





Insert the ends of the thread into the dart with a needle.

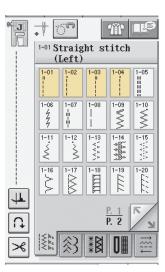




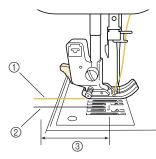
Gathering

Use on waists of skirts, sleeves of shirts, etc.

Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".

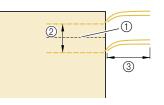


- Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension to approximately 2.0 (weaker tension).
 - * If you press GATHERING after pressing The stitch length will be set automatically to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension will be automatically set to 2.0.
- Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches) (see page 28).

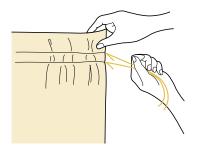


- ① Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- ③ About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)

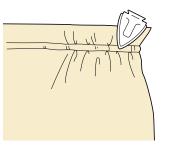
Sew two rows of straight stitches parallel to the seam line, then trim excess thread leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).



- ① Seam line
- ② 10 to 15 mm (approx. 3/8 inch to 9/16 inch)
- ③ About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)
- Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, then tie the threads.



Smooth the gathers by ironing them.



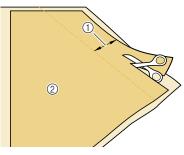
7

Sew on the seam line and remove the basting stitch.

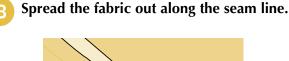
Flat Fell Seam

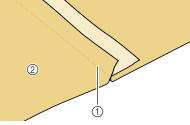
Use for reinforcing seams and finishing edges neatly.

- Select $\begin{bmatrix} 1-03\\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and attach presser foot "J".
- With right sides of the fabric together, sew the seam line, then cut half of the seam allowance from the side on which the flat fell seam will lie.
 - * When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.

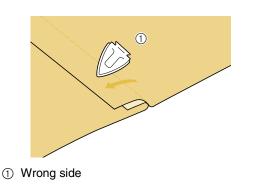


- ① About 12 mm (approx. 1/2 inch)
- ② Wrong side

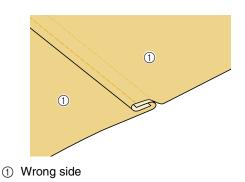




- ① Seam line
- ② Wrong side
- Lay both seam allowances on the side of the shorter seam (cut seam) and iron them.



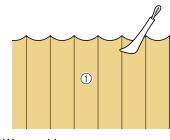
5 Fold the longer seam allowance around the shorter one, and sew the edge of the fold.



- Finished flat fell seam
- ① Surface

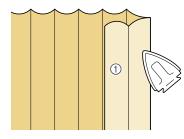
Pintuck

Mark along the folds on the wrong side of the fabric.

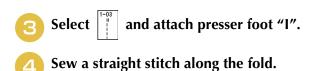




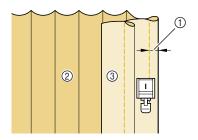
Turn the fabric and iron the folded parts only.



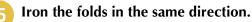


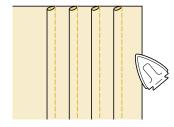


* When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



- ① Width for pintuck
- ② Wrong side
- ③ Surface





Zigzag Stitches

Zigzag stitches are useful for overcasting, appliqué, patchwork, and many other applications.

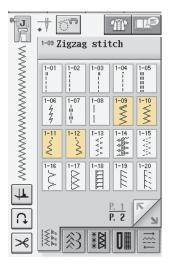
Select a stitch, and attach presser foot "J".

If the stitch which you select has a double mark """ at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches by holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.

If the stitch which you select has a dot mark " \cdot " at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches by holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (see page 46).

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
1-09	Zigzag stitch	f J	For overcasting, mending. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-10.	Zigzag stitch	t [*]	For overcasting, mending. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-11	Zigzag stitch (right)	° J	Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-12 >	Zigzag stitch (left)	° J	Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)

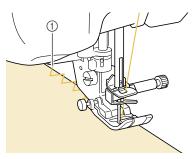
Select a stitch.



Attach presser foot "J".

Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.

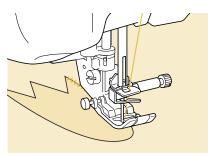


① Needle drop position

Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Attach the appliqué material using a temporary spray adhesive or basting, and then sew it.

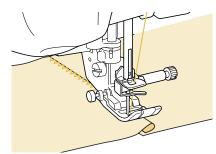
 Sew a zigzag stitch while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



Utility Stitches

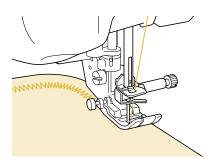
■ Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt)

Turn back the desired width of fabric and position it over the lower fabric, then sew so that the stitch bridges both pieces of fabric.



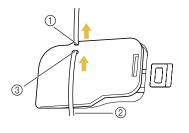
Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Shorten the stitch length setting to obtain a fine stitch. Sew slowly, keeping the seams parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



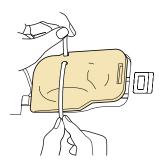
■ Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

- Remove the bobbin cover from the machine (see page 27).
- 2 Thread gimp thread through the hole in the cord guide bobbin cover from top to bottom. Position the thread in the notch at the back of the cord guide bobbin cover.

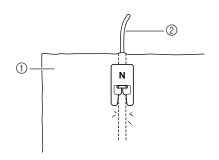


- ① Notch
- ② Gimp thread
- ③ Hole

- 3 Snap the cord guide bobbin cover into place, making sure that the gimp thread can be fed freely.
 - * Make sure there are no restrictions when feeding the thread.



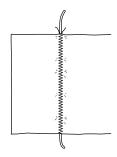
- Set the zigzag width from 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 3/32 inch).
- Attach presser foot "N".
- 6 Position the fabric right side up on top of the cord and place the cord to the rear of the machine under the presser foot.



Fabric (right side)
 Gimp thread

7

Lower the presser foot and start sewing to make a decorative finish.

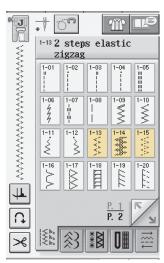


Elastic Zigzag Stitches

Use elastic zigzag stitches for tape attaching, overcasting, darning, or a wide variety of other uses.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
1-13 <> <> >>	2 step elastic zigzag	د ۲	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-14	2 step elastic zigzag	۴J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-15 <>> >>	3 step elastic zigzag	۲,	Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	ОК (Ј)

Select a stitch.

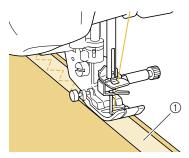




Attach presser foot "J".

■ Tape Attaching

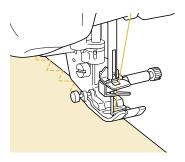
Stretch the tape flat. While stretching the tape flat, sew the tape to the fabric.



① Tape

Overcasting

Use this stitch to sew overcasting on the edge of stretch fabrics. Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



Overcasting

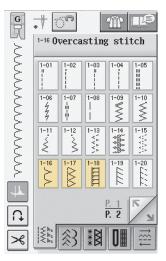
Use for the beginning and end of seams in skirts or trousers, and the beginning and end of all cuttings. Use presser foot "G", presser foot "J", or the optional side cutter attachment depending on the kind of overcasting stitch you select.

■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"

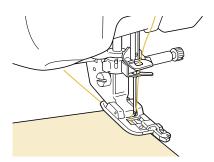
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-17	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of medium, heavyweight and easily frayable fabrics or decorative stitching.	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO



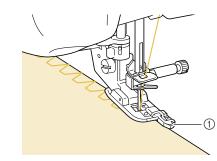
Select a stitch and attach presser foot "G".



Lower the presser foot so that the presser foot guide is set flush against the edge of the fabric.



Sew along the presser foot guide.



① Guide

• After the stitch width is adjusted, turn the handwheel toward you by hand and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may break and cause injury.



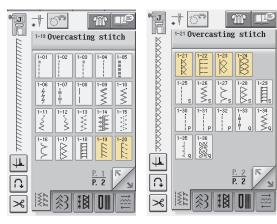
① The needle should not touch

• If the presser foot is raised to its highest level, the needle may strike the presser foot.

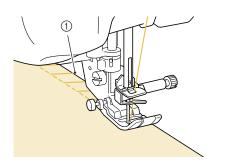
■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J"

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
1-19	Overcasting stitch	۴J	Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	ОК (J)
1-20 [~~ [~~	Overcasting stitch	f J	Reinforcing of medium stretch fabric and heavyweight fabric, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	ОК (J)
1-21 X X X	Overcasting stitch	t J	Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	ОК (J)
	Overcasting stitch	° J	Stretch knit seam	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-23	Single diamond overcast	° J C	Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	ОК (J)
1-24	Single diamond overcast	° J C	Reinforcement of stretch fabric	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.8 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)

Select a stitch and attach presser foot "J".



Sew with the needle dropping slightly off the edge of the fabric.



① Needle drop position

Overcasting Using the Optional Side Cutter

By using the side cutter, you can do overcasting while cutting the fabric.



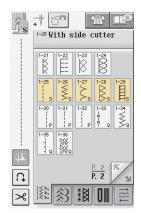
• Make sure to only select one of the stitches listed below. Using another stitch may cause the needle to hit the presser foot and break, possibly causing injury.

א Memo

Thread the needle manually when using the side cutter, or only attach the side cutter after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.

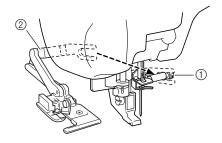
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	necule
1-25 S	With side cutter	S S	Straight stitch while cutting fabrics	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 2.5 (0 - 3/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-26 \$ \$	With side cutter	S S	Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-27 S	With side cutter	S S	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-28 S	With side cutter	S.	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-29	With side cutter	Ĵs	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Select a stitch.



Follow the steps on page 37 to remove the presser foot.

Position the fork on the side cutter's operating lever onto the needle clamp screw.

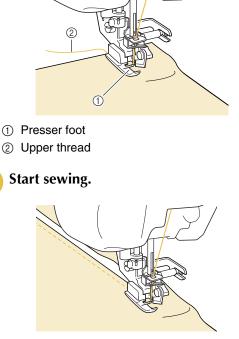


- ① Needle clamp screw
- ② Operating lever

河 Memo

Make sure that the fork of the operating lever is set onto the needle clamp screw firmly.

- Position the side cutter so that the side cutter pin is aligned with the notch in the presser foot holder, and then lower the presser foot. (1) Notch in presser foot holder ② Pin \rightarrow The side cutter is attached. Make a cut of approximately 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch) in the fabric. ① 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch) Position the fabric so that the right side of Note the cut is on top of the guide plate and the left side of the cut is underneath the presser foot. Guide plate (lower knife) ② Presser foot Memo If the fabric is not positioned correctly, the fabric will not be cut.
 - **7** Thread the needle manually and pull out a long section of the upper thread. Pass it below the presser foot and pull it out in the fabric feed direction.

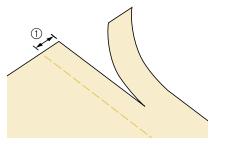


 \rightarrow A seam allowance is cut while the stitching is sewn.

If the width has been adjusted, turn the handwheel by hand to check that the needle does not touch the side cutter. If the needle touches the side cutter, it might cause the needle to break.

■ When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cutter

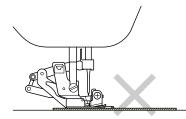
The seam margin should be approximately 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).



① Seam margin

memo

 The fabric will not be cut if the whole fabric is simply spread out underneath the presser foot guide plate. Set the fabric as explained in step ⁽³⁾ from the previous section, and then start sewing.



- One layer of 13 oz. denim can be cut.
- Clean the side cutter after use to avoid having dust and scraps of thread build up on it.
- Add a small amount of oil as required to the cutting edge of the cutter.

Quilting

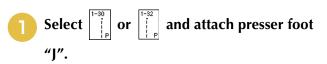
You can make beautiful quilts quickly and easily with this machine. When making a quilt, you will find it convenient to use the knee lifter and foot controller to free your hands for other tasks (see "Using the Foot Controller" on page 45 and /or see "Using the Knee Lifter" on page 53).

If there is a "P" or "Q" at the bottom of the key display, the indicated stitch is intended for quilting.

Pattern	Name of pattern	••	presser ot	Use		tch width m (inch.)]		tch length m (inch.)]	Twin
		്	<u> </u>		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
1-30 P	Piecing stitch (Right)	Ĵ	2	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	5.5 (7/32)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-31 P	Piecing stitch (Middle)	*J	2	Piecework/patchwork	_	_	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-32 i i P	Piecing stitch (Left)	Ĵ	2	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	1.5 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-33 Q	Hand-look quilting	*J	2	Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-34. 	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch	*J	2	Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-35 	Quilting appliqué stitch	łJ	2	Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	1.5 (1/16)	0.5 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	1.8 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-36 353 26 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27	Quilting stippling	J	2	Background quilting	7.0 (1/4)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Piecing

Sewing two pieces of fabric together is called piecing. When cutting pieces for quilt blocks, make sure the seam allowance is 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch).



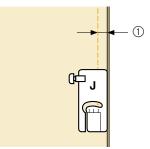
2

Align the edge of the fabric with the edge of the presser foot, and start sewing.

* To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance

along the right edge of the presser foot with

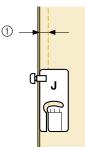
selected, the width should be set to 5.5 mm (approx. 7/32 inch).



- ① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- * To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance

along the left edge of the presser foot with

selected, the width should be set to 1.5 mm (approx. 1/32 inch).



① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

 To change the needle position, use + or - in the width display.



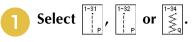
🦙 Memo

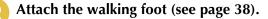
Using a straight stitch (middle needle position) makes it easier to sew smoothly (see page 63).

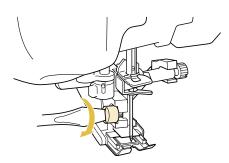
Quilting

Sewing together the quilt top, batting, and backing is called quilting. You can sew the quilt with the walking foot to keep the quilt top, batting, and backing from sliding. The walking foot has a set of feed dogs that move together with the feed dogs in the needle plate during sewing.

For straight line quilting, use the walking foot and the straight stitch needle plate. Always select a straight stitch (middle needle position) when using the straight stitch needle plate.





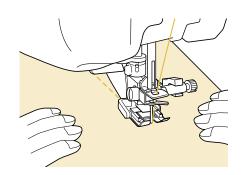




Place one hand on each side of the presser foot to hold the fabric secure while sewing.

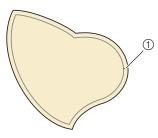
א Memo

- Sew at slow to medium speed.
- Do not sew in reverse or use stitches that require side ways or reverse feeding. Always check to be sure that your quilting surface is securely basted before beginning to sew. Specialized machine quilt needles and threads are also available for machine quilting.



■ Appliqué

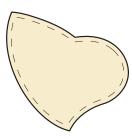
Trace the pattern onto the appliqué fabric and then cut around it, leaving a 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch) seam allowance.



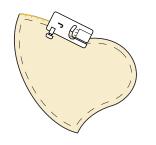
- ① Seam allowance: 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch)
- Place a piece of thick paper or stabilizer cut to the finished size of the appliqué design onto the fabric, and then fold over the seam margin using an iron. Clip curves when necessary.

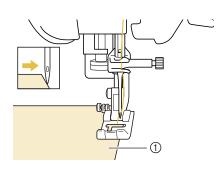


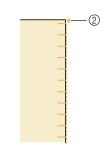
3 Turn the appliqué over, and attach the thick paper with basting pins or a basting stitch.



- 4 Selee
- Select $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -95 \\ -3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and attach presser foot "J".
- 5 Use the quilting appliqué stitch to attach the appliqué. Sew around the edge while dropping the needle as close to the edge as possible.







- Appliqué
- ② Needle drop position

CAUTION

• Be careful that the needle does not strike a basting pin during sewing. Striking a pin can cause the needle to break, resulting in injury.

You can use the appliqué technique to attach appliqué designs like the three pictured below.



- ① Dresden plate
- ② Stained glass
- ③ Sunbonnet sue

Quilting with Satin Stitches

Use the foot controller to sew with satin stitches. If you set the speed control slide to control the stitch width, you can make subtle changes in the stitch width during sewing.



Attach the foot controller (see page 45).

2

Select $\left| \stackrel{\text{\tiny 1-34}}{\lesssim} \right|$ and attach presser foot "J".



Press – in the length display to shorten

the stitch length.



🥱 Memo

The setting will vary according to the kind of fabric and the thickness of the thread, but a length of 0.3 to 0.5 mm (approx. 1/64 to 1/32 inch) is best for satin stitches.

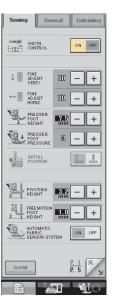
4 Press

to use the speed control slide

to control the stitch width.

Set the width control to "ON".

5



Memo

You can use the speed control slide to adjust the stitch width. Use the foot controller to adjust the sewing speed.

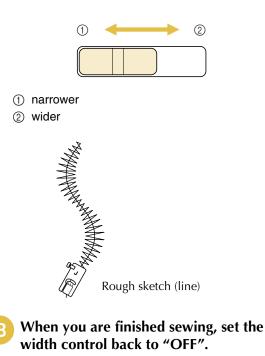


 \rightarrow The display will return to the original screen.

Start sewing.

*

You can adjust the stitch width during sewing by moving the sewing speed controller. Slide the lever to the left, and the stitch width becomes narrower. Slide it to the right, the stitch width becomes wider. The size of the width changes equally on both sides of the middle needle position.



Free-motion Quilting

With free-motion quilting, the feed dogs can be lowered (using the feed dog position switch) so that the fabric can be moved freely in any direction. For free-motion quilting, use free-motion quilting foot "C" or free-motion open toe quilting foot "O" depending on the stitch that is selected, and set the machine to free-motion sewing mode. In this mode, the presser foot is raised to the necessary height for free-motion sewing.

We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed. You can adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide on the machine.

Using Free-motion Quilting Foot "C"

The free-motion quilting foot "C" is used for freemotion sewing using the straight stitch needle plate.



Free-motion quilting foot "C"

CAUTION

- With free-motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.
- When using free-motion quilting foot "C", be sure to use the straight stitch needle plate and sew with the needle in middle (center) needle position. If the needle is moved to any position other than the middle (center) needle position, the needle may break, which may result in injuries.

Memo

• When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press

to display "FREE MOTION FOOT HEIGHT" on P. 1 of the settings screen.

Press - or + to select the height that

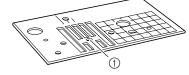
the quilting foot is raised above the fabric.

Increase the setting by pressing +, for example, when sewing very stretchy fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



 In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension. Test with a sample piece of fabric that is similar to your chosen fabric.

Attach the straight stitch needle plate (see page 65).



① Round hole

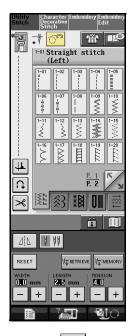


Notice that there is a round hole in this needle plate.



Press of to set the machine to free-

motion sewing mode.



→ The key appears as , and the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height for free-motion sewing.



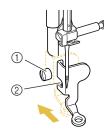


Select any of the following stitches.

1-01	1-02	1-03	1-04	1-05
1-07 	1-30	1-31 P	1-32	1-33

→ Free-motion quilting foot "C" is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen.

- Remove the presser foot holder (see page 38).
- 5 Attach free-motion quilting foot "C" at the front with the presser foot holder screw aligned with the notch in the quilting foot.

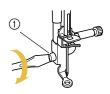


Presser foot holder screw
 Notch

بر Note

Make sure that the quilting foot is attached properly and not slanted.

6 Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver with your left hand.



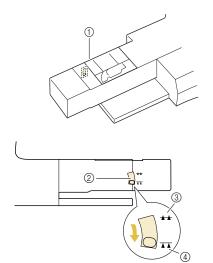
① Presser foot holder screw



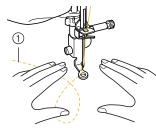
• Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.

Lower the feed dog position switch, located

at the rear of the base of the machine, to \mathbf{T} .



- 1) Rear of machine
- ② Feed dog position switch
- (as seen from the rear of the machine)
- ③ Up
- ④ Down
- B Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch) in length.



1 Stitch

Press **mode**.

After sewing is finished, raise the feed dog

position switch to ++ to raise the feed dogs.

- බ Memo
 - Normally, the feed dog position switch is in the up position.
 - Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

Using Free-motion Open Toe Quilting Foot "O"

The free-motion open toe quilting foot "O" is used for free-motion quilting with zigzag or decorative stitches or for free-motion quilting of straight lines on fabric with an uneven thickness. Various stitches can be sewn using free-motion open toe quilting foot "O". For details on the stitches that can be used, refer to the "Stitch Setting Chart" at the end of this manual.



Free-motion open toe quilting foot "O"

Note

Free-motion open toe quilting foot "O" can also be used with the straight stitch needle plate. We recommend using free-motion open toe quilting foot "O" with free-motion sewing of fabrics of uneven thicknesses. For details on installing the straight stitch needle plate, refer to page 65. Select one of the following stitches when using the straight stitch needle plate.

1-01 " !	1-02	1-03	1-04	1-05
1-07 	1-30 P	1-31 P	1-32	1-33 ⊯ ₩ ₩ Q

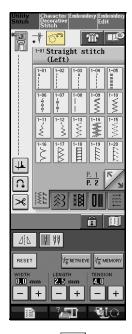
🏹 Memo

In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page 50). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.



Press 🕝 to set the machine to free-

motion sewing mode.



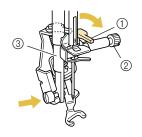
→ The key appears as , and the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height for free-motion sewing.

Select a stitch.

ך Memo

Free-motion open toe quilting foot "O" is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen. When using the straight stitch needle plate, free-motion quilting foot "C" is indicated.

- Remove the presser foot holder (see page 38).
- Attach free-motion open toe quilting foot "O" by positioning the pin of the quilting foot above the needle clamp screw and aligning the lower-left of the quilting foot and the presser bar.



- ① Pin
- ② Needle clamp screw
- ③ Presser bar

<mark>と Note</mark>

Anake sure that the quilting foot is not slanted.

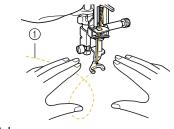
5 Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver with your left hand.



① Presser foot holder screw

CAUTION

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.
- **5** Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch) in length.



① Stitch

Press real to cancel the free-motion sewing mode.

🏹 Memo

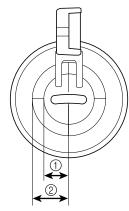
Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

Echo Quilting Using the Free-motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"

Sewing quilting lines at equal distances around a motif is called echo quilting. The quilting lines, which appear as ripples echoing away from the motif, are the distinguishing characteristic of this quilting style. Use the free-motion echo quilting foot "E" for echo quilting. Using the measurement on the presser foot as a guide, sew around the motif at a fixed interval. We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed.



Free-motion echo quilting foot "E" measurement



- ① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ② 9.5 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)

A CAUTION

• With free-motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.

n Memo

- When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press
 - to display "FREE MOTION FOOT HEIGHT" on P. 1 of the settings screen (see page 16). Press — or + to select the
 - height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric. Increase the setting by pressing
 - +, for example, when sewing very soft fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



 In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page 50). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric. Press 2 to set the machine to free-

motion sewing mode.



→ The key appears as , and the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height for free-motion sewing.

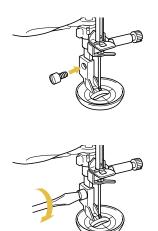


- Follow the steps on page 37 "Removing the Presser Foot" to remove the presser foot.
- Remove the presser foot holder (see page 38) and the screw.
- Position the free-motion echo quilting foot "E" on the left side of the presser bar with the holes in the quilting foot and presser bar aligned.

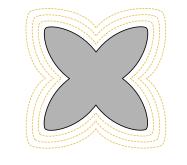




Tighten the screw with the included screwdriver.



Finished project





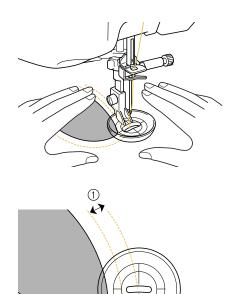
mode.

Press 🛐 to cancel the free-motion sewing

CAUTION

• Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.

Using the measurement on the quilting foot as a guide, sew around the motif.



① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

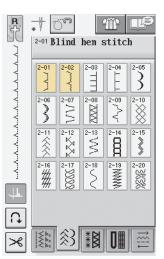
Blind Hem Stitches

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
2-01	Blind hem stitch	R	Hemming woven fabrics	0.0 (0)	3 ← - → 3	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
2-02	Blind hem stitch stretch	R	Hemming stretch fabric	0.0 (0)	3 ← - → 3	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO

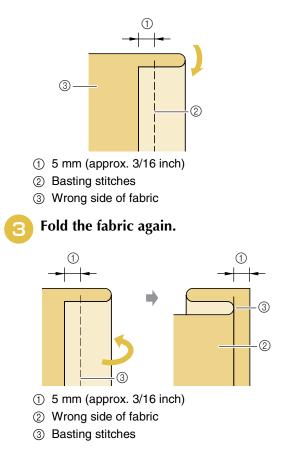
4

Select from these stitches to sew the hems or cuffs of dresses, blouses, pants, or skirts.

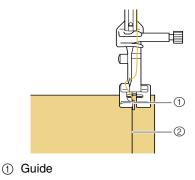
Select a stitch.



Place the fabric wrong side up, and fold and baste the fabric.

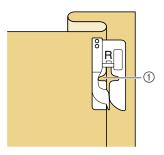


Attach blind hem stitch foot "R", and lower the presser foot. Position the fabric so the folded edge touches the guide of the presser foot.



② Fold

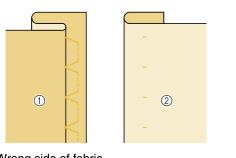
5 Sew the fabric, keeping the folded edge in contact with the presser foot.



① Needle position



Remove the basting stitches and turn the fabric over.



- ① Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric

n Memo

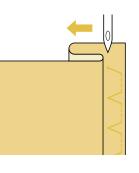
Blind hem stitches cannot be sewn if the left needle drop point does not catch the fold. If the needle catches too much of the fold, the fabric cannot be unfolded and the seam appearing on the right side of the fabric will be very large, leaving an unattractive finish. If you experience either of these cases, follow the instructions below to solve the problem.

If the Needle does not Catch the Fold

Adjust the width so that the needle slightly catches

the fold by pressing – in the width display.

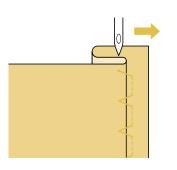




If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Fold

Adjust the width so that the needle slightly catches the fold by pressing + in the width display.

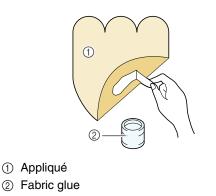




Appliqué

Use a temporary spray adhesive, fabric glue or a basting stitch to attach the appliqué to the fabric.

* This will keep the fabric from moving during sewing.

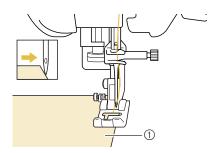




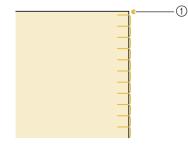
* Adjust the stitch length and width to correspond to the appliqué shape, size, and quality of material (see page 49).

n Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.
- Attach presser foot "J". Check that the needle drops slightly off the edge of the appliqué, then start sewing.



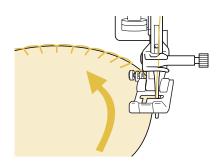
① Appliqué material



1 Needle drop position

Sewing Sharp Curves

Stop the machine with the needle in the fabric outside the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and turn the fabric a little bit at a time while sewing for an attractive finish to the seam.





Memo

Placing a lightweight tear away stabilizer beneath the stitching area will improve the stitch placement along the edge of the appliqué fabric.

Shelltuck Stitches

Shelltuck stitches give an attractive appearance of shells along the curve of a collar. This stitch pattern can be used for edging the neckline or sleeves of dresses and blouses.



Memo

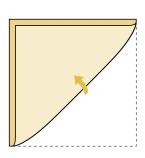
For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Increase the upper thread tension for an attractive scallop finish to the shelltuck stitches (see page 50).

Memo

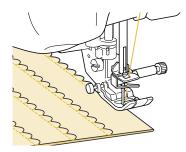
If the upper thread tension is too weak, the shelltuck stitches will not scallop.

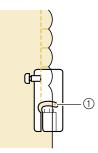
3 To make rows of shell tuck stitches, fold the fabric in half along the bias.





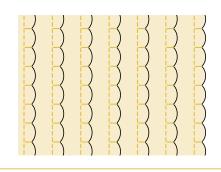
Attach presser foot "J". Set the needle drop point slightly off the edge of the fabric, and start sewing.





① Needle drop position

Unfold the fabric, and iron the tucks to one side.



memo

5

To make shell tucks at the edge of a collar or neckline, follow the pattern's instructions and then use this stitch to make a decorative finish on the collar or neckline.

Scallop Stitches

This wave-shaped satin stitch is called the scallop stitch. Use this stitch to decorate the edges of blouse collars and handkerchiefs or use it as a hem accent.

Memo

A temporary spray adhesive may be necessary for lightweight fabrics. Test sew the fabric before sewing a project.

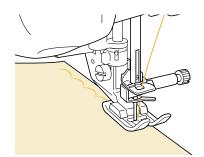


Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

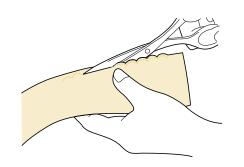
Attach presser foot "N". Sew scallop stitches along the edge of the fabric.

Do not sew directly on the edge of the fabric.





Trim along the seam, making sure not to cut the stitches.



Memo

Use a seam sealant to secure the edges of the scallop stitches.

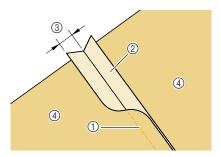
Top Stitching

For a decorative look called "Crazy Quilting", the following stitches can be sewn on top of a pressed seam allowance.



Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".

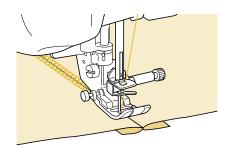
With the right sides facing each other, sew two pieces of fabric together, and then press open the seam allowance.



- ① Straight stitch
- ② Seam margins
- ③ 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ④ Wrong side
- Select a stitch for top stitching.

2-07

Place the fabric right side up in the Δ machine, and center the presser foot over the seam when sewing.

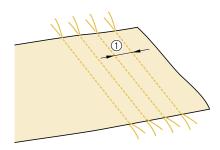


① Right side of fabric

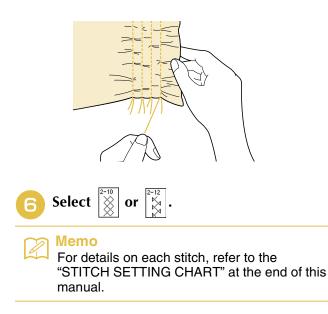
Smocking Stitches

Use smocking stitches for decorative sewing on clothes, etc.

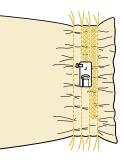
- Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".
 - Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and loosen the upper thread tension to approximately 2.0 (See pages 49 through 50).
 - Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).
- 4 Sew the seams, leaving approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch) between the seams, then trim excess thread, leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).



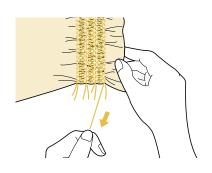
- ① Approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
- Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, and then smooth the gathers by ironing them.



	Sew the spaces	between	the	straight	seams.
--	----------------	---------	-----	----------	--------



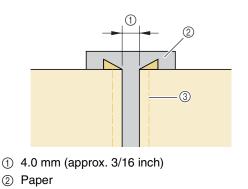




Fagoting

When there is a space between two fabrics with thread sewn over the space to join the fabrics together, it is called fagoting. Use this stitch when sewing blouses or children's clothes.

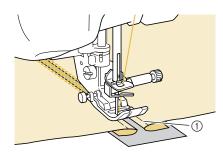
> Baste two pieces of fabric onto thin paper, leaving a space of 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) between the fabrics.



- ③ Basting stitches
- $\bigcirc Select \stackrel{2^{-11}}{\swarrow} or \stackrel{2^{-12}}{\swarrow}_{\downarrow\downarrow}.$

河 Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual. 3 Attach presser foot "J". Align the center of the presser foot with the middle of the space between the fabrics and begin sewing.



- ① Basting stitches
- Memo
 - Use a thick thread.
- When sewing is finished, gently tear the paper away.

Tape or Elastic Attaching

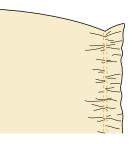
- Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".
- Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch), and loosen the upper thread tension to 2.0 (See pages 49 through 50).

Memo

Be sure that neither automatic reinforcement

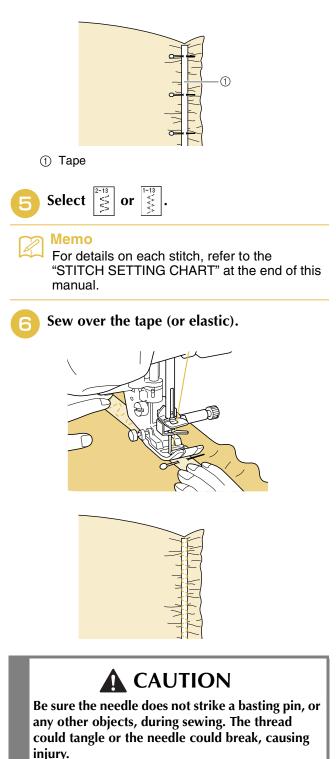
 \bigcap nor automatic thread cutting > is selected.

Sew two rows of straight stitches on the right side of the fabric, then pull the bobbin thread to create the necessary gather.

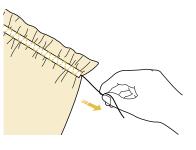


Memo

Before sewing the straight stitch, rotate the handwheel and pull up the bobbin thread. Holding the top and bobbin thread, pull a length of thread out from the rear of the machine. (Be sure that the presser foot is raised.) Place the tape over the gather, and hold it in place with basting pins.



Pull out the straight stitch threads.



Heirloom

Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)

Use for sewing tablecloths, decorative hems, and decorative stitching on shirt fronts.

n Memo

Use a light to medium weight homespun fabric with a little stiffness.

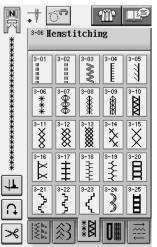
Insert a type 130/705H, size 100/16 Wing needle.

CAUTION

- The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Thread the wing needle by hand, from front to back. Refer to "Threading Manually" on page 31. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.
- A more attractive finish can be obtained if you use a "130/705H Wing" needle when sewing these patterns. If using a wing needle and the stitch width has been set manually, check that the needle will not touch the presser foot by carefully rotating the handwheel before starting sewing.

Select a stitch and attach presser foot "N".

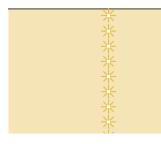
Select any stitch between 3-01 and 3-25.



🏹 Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual. Start sewing.

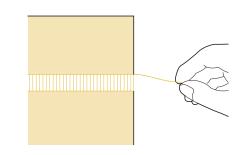
Example: Illustration of finished product



■ Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1))

Pull out several threads from one area on a piece of fabric to open the area.

* Pull out 5 or 6 threads to leave a 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) area open.



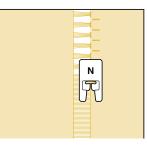
Memo Loosely woven fabrics work best for this.

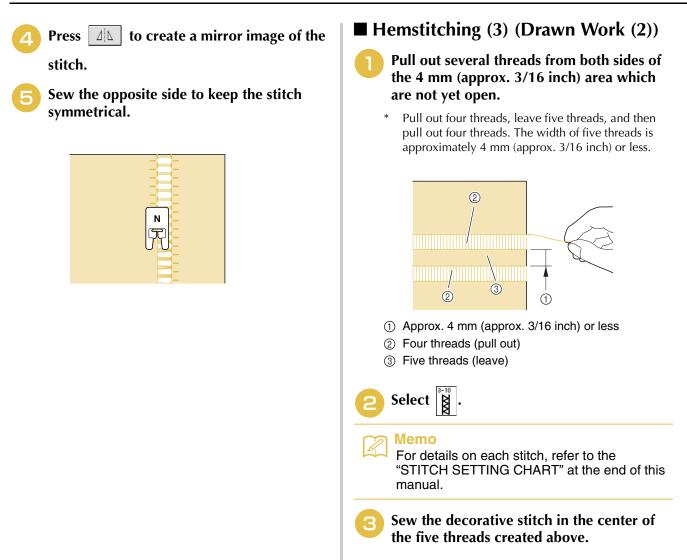
2	Select	3-04 E	
---	--------	-----------	--

א <mark>Memo</mark>

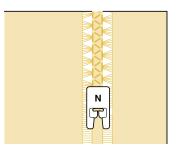
For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Attach presser foot "N". With the right side of the fabric facing up, sew one edge of the open area.





Å



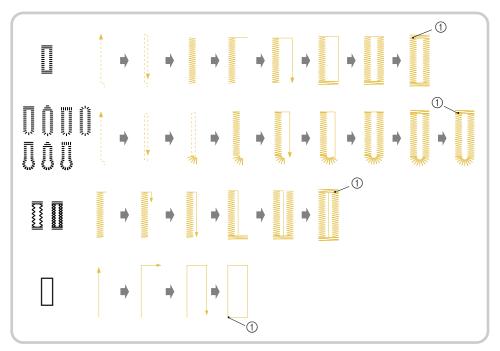
Memo A wing needle can be used for Hemstitching (3).

One-step Buttonholes

With one-step buttonholes, you can make buttonholes appropriate to the size of your button.

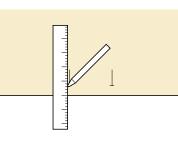
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		foot			Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie
4-01 0	Narrow rounded buttonhole	A	Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
⁴⁻⁰²	Wide round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-03 ()	Tapered round ended buttonhole		Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
⁴⁻⁰⁴	Round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-05 U	Round ended buttonhole	A	Buttonholes with bar tack	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-06 0	Round double ended buttonhole	A	Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-07	Narrow squared buttonhole		Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-08	Wide squared buttonhole	A	Buttonholes with extra space for larger decorative buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-09	Squared buttonhole	A	Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks	5.0 (7/32)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-10	Stretch buttonhole	A	Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics	6.0 (15/ 64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.0 (1/16)	0.5 - 2.0 (1/32 - 1/16)	NO
4-11	Heirloom buttonhole	A	Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics	6.0 (15/ 64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.5 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/1 - 1/8)	NO
4-12	Bound buttonhole	A	The first step in making bound buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 6.0 (0 - 15/64)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
J	Keyhole buttonhole	A	Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
1 4-14 1	Tapered keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-15 U	Keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack for reinforcement in heavyweight or thick fabrics	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

One-step buttonholes are sewn from the front of the presser foot to the back, as shown below.



① Reinforcement stitching

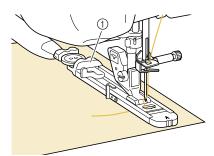
- Select a buttonhole stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".
- 2 Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.



Memo

The maximum buttonhole length is about 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches) (diameter + thickness of the button).

Pull out the button holder plate on the presser foot, and insert the button that will be put through the buttonhole. Then tighten the button holder plate around the button.



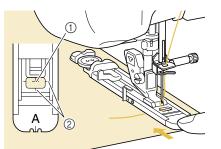
① Button holder plate



The size of the buttonhole is decided by the button holder plate holding the button.



Align the presser foot with the mark on the fabric, and lower the presser foot.



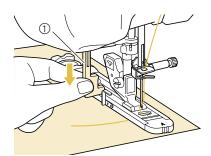
- ① Mark on the fabric
- ② Marks on the presser foot

<u> い</u> Note

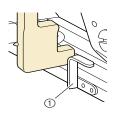
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
 - Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the buttonhole will not be sewn at the correct size.



Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.



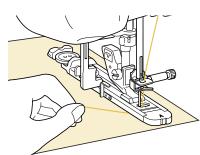
1) Buttonhole lever



Metal bracket

6 Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then start sewing.

* Feed the fabric carefully by hand while the buttonhole is sewn.

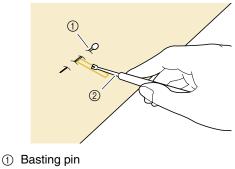


→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

河 Memo

- If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.
- 7

Insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, and then insert the seam ripper into the center of the buttonhole and cut towards the pin.

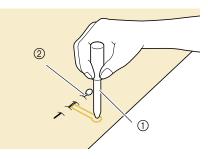


② Seam ripper

When using the seam ripper to open the buttonhole, do not put your hand or finger in the path of the ripper. The ripper may slip and cause injury. Do not use the seam ripper in any other way than how it is intended.

Memo

For keyhole buttonholes, use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the rounded end of the buttonhole. Then insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, insert a seam ripper into the hole made with the eyelet punch, and cut towards the pin.

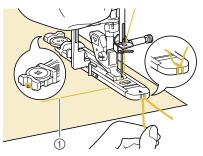


- ① Eyelet punch
- Basting pin

Sewing Stretch Fabrics

When sewing on stretch fabric with	4-10	or	4-11	,
sew the buttonhole stitches over a gi				

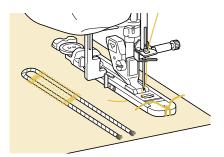
Hook the gimp thread onto the back of presser foot "A". Insert the ends into the grooves at the front of the presser foot, and then temporarily tie them there.



① Upper thread

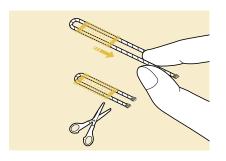


Lower the presser foot and start sewing.



🦙 Memo

Set the width of the satin stitches to the width of the gimp thread, and set the buttonhole width to be 2-3 times the width of the gimp thread. 3 Once sewing is completed, gently pull the gimp thread to remove any slack, and trim off any excess.



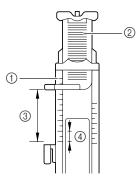
ן Memo

After using the seam ripper to cut open the threads over the buttonhole, trim off the threads.

Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do not Fit into the Button Holder Plate

Use the markings on the presser foot scale to set the size of the buttonhole. One mark on the presser foot scale equals 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).

Add the button diameter and thickness together, and then set the plate at the calculated value.



- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Button holder plate
- ③ Completed measurement of diameter + thickness
- ④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

n Memo

For example, for a button with a diameter of 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch) and a thickness of 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch), the scale should be set at 25 mm (approx. 1 inch).



- ① 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
- ② 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch)

Four-step Buttonholes

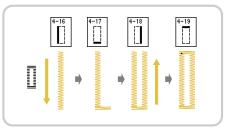
You can sew 4-step buttonholes using the following 4 stitches together. You can sew any desired length for the buttonhole when using 4-step buttonholes. 4-step buttonholes are a good option when attaching oversize buttons.

Note

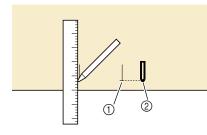
When changing the stitch settings for the left side of the buttonhole, make sure that all setting should be changed to match.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin
		1001		Auto.	Auto. Manual A		Manual	neeule
4-16	4 step buttonhole 1	R	Left side of 4 step buttonhole (Forward stitching)	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-17	4 step buttonhole 2	R	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-18	4 step buttonhole 3	R	Right side of 4 step buttonhole (Reverse stitching)	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-19	4 step buttonhole 4	≥ R	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Four-step buttonholes are sewn as shown below.



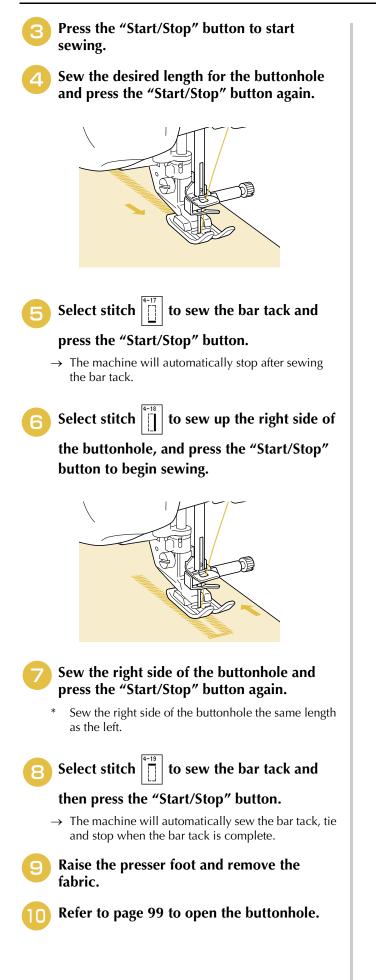
Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.



- ① Marks on fabric
- ② Finished stitching

Attach monogramming foot "N", and select

Utility Stitch	Chai Deco Stito	racter prative ch	Embroid	lery Em Ed	broidery it		
R	+ T 🗈	57		TIY	∎Ľ⊖		
Π	4-16 4	step	butt	onho	le 1		
	4-01 0	⁴⁻⁰²	4-03 ()	⁴⁻⁰⁴	4-05 D		
	4-06 0	4-07	4-08	4-03	4-10		
	4-11	4-12	1 3	4-14 ()	⁴⁻¹⁵		
	4-16	4-17	4-18	4-19	4-20		
₽ ₽	4-21	4-22 0000000	4-23 ©	4-24 O	4-25 315		
\geq	17.7 7.7.7	<u></u>	*₿	D			
				Î			
⊿[⊾	V	W					
WIDTH 5.0 r	nm	LENGT	H mm	tensi 4. 0	ON		
$\left[- \right]$	+	-	+	-	+		
				_			

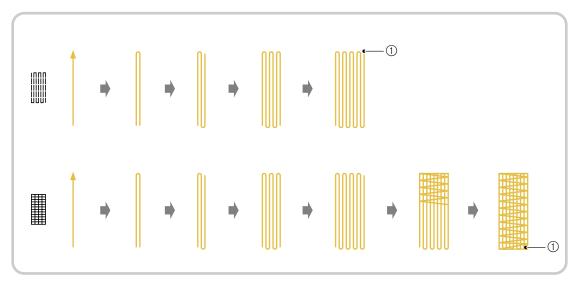


■ Darning

Use darning stitches for mending and other applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
	1001			Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	neeule
4-20	Darning	A	Darning of medium weight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-21	Darning		Darning of heavyweight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

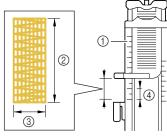
Darning is performed by sewing from the front of the presser foot to the back as shown below.



- ① Reinforcement stitches
- Select a stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".



Set the scale to the desired length of the darning.

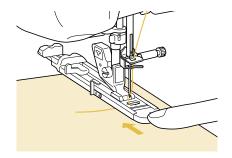


- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ Width 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

ഉ Memo

The maximum length for darning is 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches).

Check that the needle drops at the desired position and lower the presser foot, making sure the upper thread passes underneath the buttonhole foot.

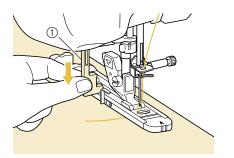


<mark>と Note</mark>

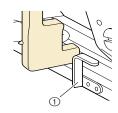
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Set the presser foot so that there is no gap behind the section marked with an "A" (the shaded area in the illustration below). If there is a gap, the size of the darning will not be correct.



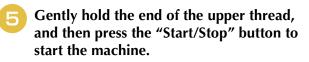
4 Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.

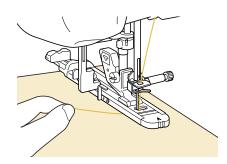


① Buttonhole lever



① Metal bracket





→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

memo

If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

Bar Tacks

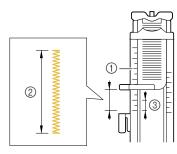
Use bar tacks to reinforce areas that will be subject to strain, such as pocket corners.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	lieeule
4-22 100000000000000000000000000000000000	Bar tack		Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	0.4 (1/64)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

3

Select

Attach buttonhole foot "A" and set the scale to the length of the bar tack you wish to sew.

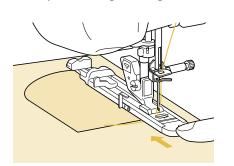


- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

n Memo

Bar tacks can be between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). Bar tacks are usually between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch).

Set the fabric so that the pocket moves towards you during sewing.

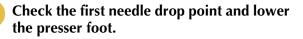


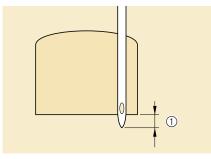
🕂 Note

4

- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the bar tack will not be sewn to the correct size.

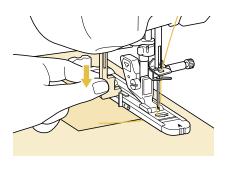


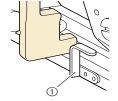




① 2 mm (approx. 1/16 inch)

Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.

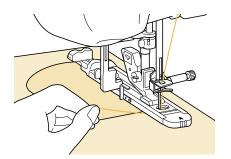




① Metal bracket

Gent

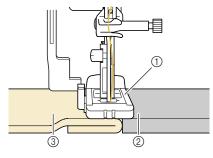
Gently hold the end of the upper thread and begin sewing.



→ When sewing is completed, the machine will sew reinforcement stitches and stop automatically.

■ Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics

Place a piece of folded fabric or cardboard beside the fabric being sewn to level the buttonhole foot and allow for easier feeding.



- ① Presser foot
- ② Thick paper
- ③ fabric

河 Memo

If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

Button Sewing

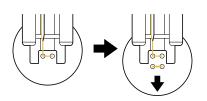
Buttons can be sewn on using the machine.

Buttons with 2 or 4 holes can be attached.

Stitch Stitc	h name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]	Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle	
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie	
4-23 ⊙ Button se	wing	¶ ¶	Attaching buttons	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 4.5 (3/32 - 3/16)	-	_	NO	
• Do not thread of		tomatic th	read cutting function wh	en sewin	g buttons. Otl	herwise	e, you will lo	se the	
Select 🔄].		E		the handwh le goes into				
2 Raise the bed table			etach the flat	side * To a	e needle does t e, adjust the stit attach the butto cess.	ch widt	h.		
3 Lower the to lower t			switch to T		ly hold the e sewing.	end of t	the upper th	nread and	
		- 8			machine stops shed.	automa	atically when s	sewing is	
			Memo If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn.						
① Feed dog	position sv	vitch				AUTI	ION		
button al	ong the m	ietal plate	M", slide the e and into the presser foot.	Make sure the needle does not strike the button during sewing. The needle may break and cause injury.					
				end o threa fabri	the wrong of the bobbin ad through to c. Tie the tw he threads.	n threa o the v	ad to pull th vrong side o	ne upper of the	
 Button Metal pla 				1				-	

■ Attaching 4 Hole Buttons

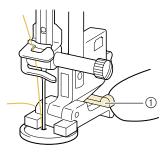
Sew the two holes closest to you. Then raise the presser foot and move the fabric so that the needle goes into the next two holes, and sew them in the same way.



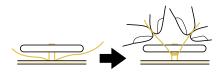
■ Attaching a Shank to the Button



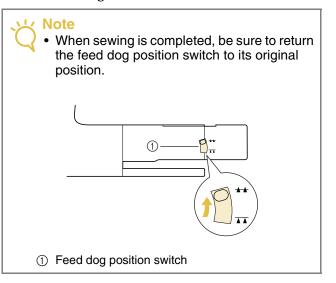
Pull the shank lever toward you before sewing.



- ① Shank lever
- Pull the two ends of the upper thread between the button and the fabric, wind them around the shank, and then tie them firmly together.



3 Tie the ends of the bobbin thread from the beginning and end of sewing together on the wrong side of the fabric.

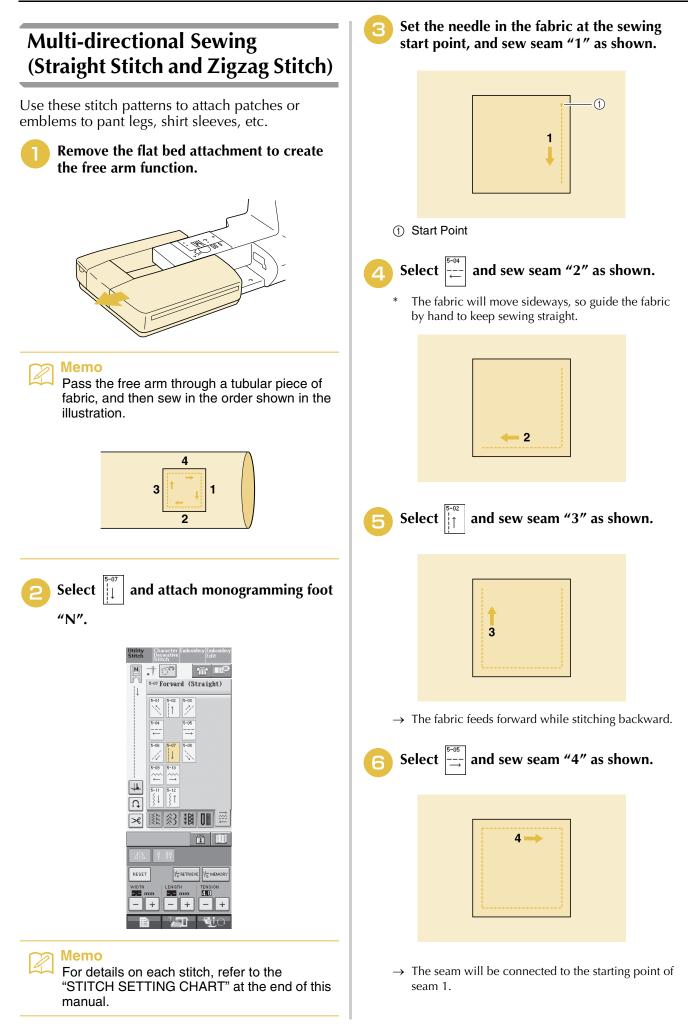


2 Cut off any excess thread.

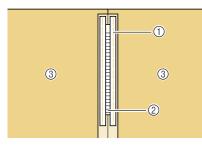
Eyelet

Use this stitch for making belt holes and other similar applications.

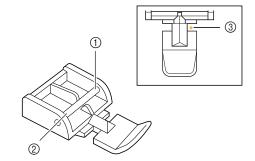
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		-	titch width nm (inch.)]		titch length mm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001			Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie
4-24 O	Eyelet	r	For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.		7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	NO
4-25 ಕೃಷ್ಣ	Star eyelet	R	For making star-shaped on holes.	l eyelets	_	_	_	_	NO
2 U	elect o or the stitch		titch width lisplay to	4 \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	→ Whe rein Note	en sewing is fin forcement stitch e stitch patterr	ished, the sand	and start sev the machine sev I stops automatic	vs cally.
cl	hoose the size of t	RETRIEVE	MORY	5	Use t	stments (see the eyelet pu er of the stite	nch t	o make a hol	e in the
		2) (Actu	3 O Jal size)			:			
2	Large 7 mm (approx. Medium 6 mm (approx. Small 5 mm (approx.	ox. 15/64 ir							
Ϋ́ζ	<mark>lote</mark> Dnly one size is ava	ilable for	4-25 - με - γην						
🔰 th	ttach monogramn ne handwheel to c osition.								
	1)	MANA + W							
1	Needle drop position								



3 Press the seam allowance open and attach the zipper with a basting stitch in the middle of each side of the zipper tape.



- ① Basting stitches
- Zipper
- ③ Wrong side of fabric
- Remove presser foot "J". Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the zipper foot.

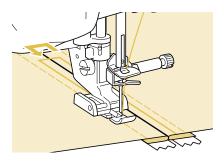


- 1 Right
- ② Left

5

③ Needle drop position

- When using zipper foot "1", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Turn the handwheel to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.
- Topstitch 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 to 3/8 inch) from the seamed edge of the fabric, then remove the basting.



memo

Zipper Insertion

Centered Zipper

Select

Use for bags and other such applications.

41 BE

1-04

-09 1-10

1-05

≶

1-03 Straight stitch

(Middle)

|-02

1-12

1-01

1-0

44

Ş

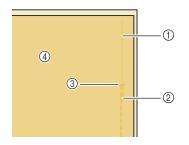
1-16

 \leq

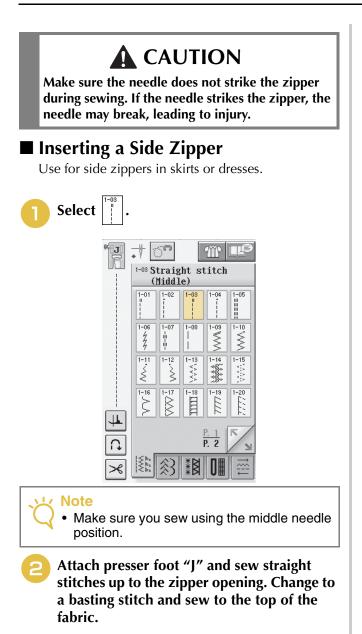
• For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

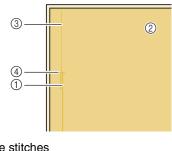
<mark>火 Note</mark>

- Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.
- Attach presser foot "J" and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch (see page 67) and sew to the top of the fabric.



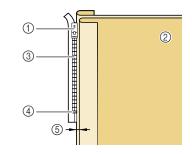
- ① Basting stitches
- ② Reverse stitches
- ③ End of zipper opening
- ④ Wrong side of fabric





- ① Reverse stitches
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Basting stitches
- ④ End of zipper opening

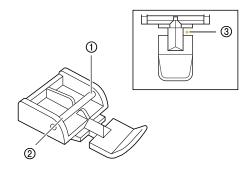
Press the seam allowance open and align the folded hem along the teeth of the zipper, while maintaining 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) of sewing space.



- ① Zipper pull tab
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Zipper teeth
- ④ End of zipper opening
- (5) 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

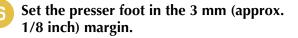
Remove presser foot "J".

Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the presser foot.

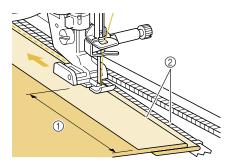


- ① Right
- 2 Left
- ③ Needle drop position

When using zipper foot "1", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Turn the handwheel to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.



- Starting from the end of the zipper opening, sew to a point about 50 mm (approx.
 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, then stop the machine.
- Pull down the zipper slider, then continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.

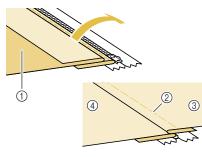


- 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)
- ② 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

CAUTION

Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.

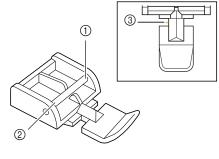
Close the zipper, turn the fabric over, and sew a basting stitch.



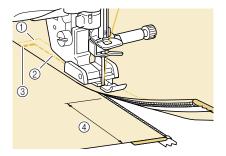
- ① Front of the skirt (wrong side of fabric)
- ② Basting stitches
- ③ Front of the skirt (right side of fabric)
- ④ Back of the skirt (right side of fabric)

Remove the presser foot, and reattach it so that the left side of the pin is attached to the presser foot holder.

* When sewing the left side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the right side of the presser foot. When sewing the right side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the left side of the presser foot.



- ① Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position
- Set the fabric so that the left edge of the presser foot touches the edge of the zipper teeth.
- Sew reverse stitches at the top of the zipper, then continue sewing.
- 3 Stop sewing about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, leave the needle in the fabric, and remove the basting stitches.
- **4** Open the zipper and sew the rest of the seam.



- ① Basting stitches
- ② 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch)
- ③ Reverse stitches
- ④ 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)

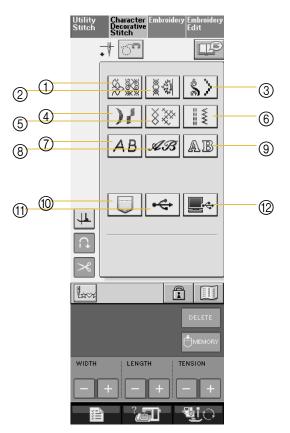


Chapter 4 Character/ Decorative Stitches

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS	116
■ Stitch Selection Screens	117
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch Patter	ns/
Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns	118
Alphabet Characters	
Deleting Characters	119
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS	.120
Sewing Attractive Finishes	120
Basic Sewing	120
Making Adjustments	121
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS	.123
Key Functions	123
Changing the Size	124
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	125
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image	125
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	125
Sewing a Pattern Continuously	125
Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	126
Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern	126
Checking the Image	127
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS	.128
Before Combining	128
Combining Various Stitch Patterns	128
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns	130
Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns	130
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length	131
Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	
More Examples	133
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	.134
Stitch Data Precautions	134
Types of Stitch Data that can be Used	
■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used	
Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used	134
Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data	134
Trademarks	135
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory	
If the Memory is Full	
Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)	
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	
Recalling from the Computer	142

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS

Press Character Beconstive to display the screen below.



- Decorative stitch patterns
- ② 7mm decorative stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- ③ Satin stitch patterns
- 3 7mm satin stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- (5) Cross stitch
- ⑥ Utility decorative stitch patterns
- Alphabet characters (gothic font)
- (8) Alphabet characters (handwriting font)
- Alphabet characters (outline)
- 140) Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 140)
- ① Patterns saved in USB media (see page 141)
- ② Patterns saved on the computer (see page 142)

<mark>≻</mark>K Note

• If the screen is locked (1), unlock the screen by pressing 1. While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.

■ Stitch Selection Screens

P. 1 P.11 There are 9 categories of Character/Decorative stitch patterns.

stitch selection screen for that category.

6-004 6-005

6-009

\$\$\$\$\$

6-010

Ŕ

Ŕ

XXXXXX

9-05

Е

Т

Decorative Stitch Patterns 6-003

~~~~~

P.11

7mm Satin Stitch Patterns

ŧ

**Alphabet Characters** 

(Gothic Font)

Н Ι J

ABC abc 0~9?!- ÄÅä-

S

6-002

annan N 

6-007 6-008

XXXXX

6-001

6-006

1-V-V-V

6-011 6-012 6-013 6-014 6-015

9-01 9-02 9-03 9-04

Muunth

Ŵ

9-11 9-12 9-13 9-14 9-15

9-16 9-17 9-18 9-19 9-20

1 mm/mm/ ~ à Í

Ľ Ľ

А

F G

Κ L Μ Ν Ο

Ρ

U  $\lor$ W Х Y

Ζ

CLOSE

CLOSE

В С D

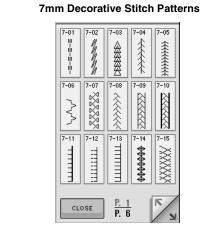
0 R

9-07 9-08 9-09 9-10

ANNUA ANNUA

WWWWW ŧ

CLOSE



**Cross Stitch** 

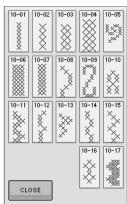
7-05

\*\*\*\*\*

7-10

7-15

XXXXXX

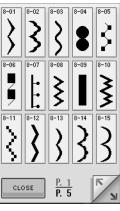


**Alphabet Characters** (Handwriting Font)

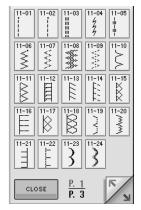
| A     | B  | C    | Ø    | æ    |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
|       | Ľ  | 느    | H    | =    |  |  |  |  |
| F     | g  | H    | I    | Ŧ    |  |  |  |  |
| K     | L  | М    | N    | 6    |  |  |  |  |
| P     | Q  | R    | 8    | T    |  |  |  |  |
| U     | V  | W    | X    | ¥    |  |  |  |  |
| X     |    |      | ,    |      |  |  |  |  |
| CLOSE |    |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| ABC   | ab | c 0^ | 9?!- | ÄÅä∙ |  |  |  |  |

#### Satin Stitch Patterns

indicates that there is more than one



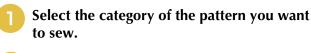
#### **Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns**



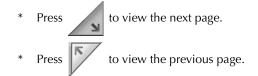
**Alphabet Characters** (Outline)

| A     | B  | C    | D    | E    |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| ন্থ   | G  | H    | I    | J    |  |  |  |  |
| K     | L  | M    | N    |      |  |  |  |  |
| P     | Q  | R    | s    | T    |  |  |  |  |
| U     | V  | W    | X    | ¥    |  |  |  |  |
| Z     |    |      | 7    | _    |  |  |  |  |
| CLOSE |    |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| ABC   | ab | c 0- | 9?!- | ÄÅä∙ |  |  |  |  |

### Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/ 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns



Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to sew.



To select a different stitch pattern, press
 When the current stitch pattern is erased, select the new stitch pattern.



 $\rightarrow$  The selected pattern is displayed.

#### **Alphabet Characters** or AB to select a AB Press ΑВ font. Character Decorative Stitch -t 6° 8-88 84 S> )1||\*\*|| AB AB AB 4 Lacos 1 Press ABC ÄÅä to change abc 0~9?!the selection screen, and then enter the characters that you want to sew. To enter a space, press \_ If you want to continue entering characters in a cLOSE , and then repeat from different font, press step 🚺. Utility Character Em Stitch Decorative Stitch .† <u></u> ABCDE F GH Ι J К L M N Ο Ρ 0 R S Т U $\vee$ W Х Ζ # CLOSE ABC abc 0~9?!- ÄÅä-Ver Ê 🗉 LENGTH

Memo There are three fonts for alphabet character stitching.

### Deleting Characters



Press DELETE to delete the last character.



#### ן Memo

Characters are deleted individually starting with the last character entered.



R

#### Select the correct character.

| Utility<br>Stitch    | Utility Character<br>Stitch Decorative<br>Stitch |        |     | dery Em<br>Ed | broiders<br>it |  |  |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------|-----|---------------|----------------|--|--|
| R                    | .† (                                             | 57     |     | [             | ∎₽             |  |  |
| ω.                   | ω                                                |        |     |               |                |  |  |
| $\subseteq$          | α                                                | b      | С   | d             | е              |  |  |
|                      | f                                                | g      | h   | i             | j              |  |  |
|                      | k                                                | Ι      | m   | n             | 0              |  |  |
|                      | р                                                | q      | r   | s             | t              |  |  |
|                      | u                                                | $\vee$ | W   | ×             | У              |  |  |
| <b>₩</b>             | z                                                |        |     | ,             | _              |  |  |
| L<br>L               | CLC                                              | SE     |     |               |                |  |  |
| $\geq$               | ABC                                              | ab     | с 0 | ~9?!-         | ÄÅä∙           |  |  |
| Lators               |                                                  |        |     | Î             |                |  |  |
|                      |                                                  |        |     | DE            | LETE           |  |  |
| tatat az L S         |                                                  |        |     |               |                |  |  |
| WIDTH LENGTH TENSION |                                                  |        |     |               |                |  |  |
|                      |                                                  | ?      | D   |               | l0             |  |  |

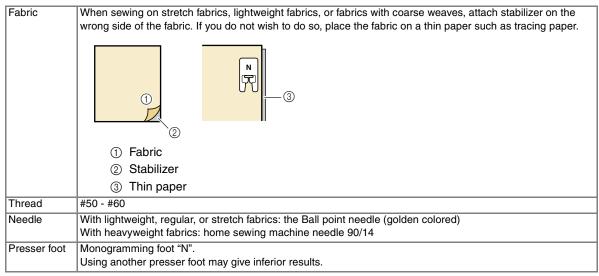
## SEWING STITCH PATTERNS

## **Sewing Attractive Finishes**

To achieve attractive results when sewing character/decorative stitches, check the table below for the proper fabric/needle/thread combinations.

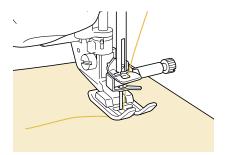
#### بر Note

- Other factors, such as fabric thickness, stabilizer material, etc., also have an effect on the stitch, so you should always sew a few trial stitches before beginning your project.
- When sewing satin stitch patterns, there may be shrinking or bunching of stitches, so be sure to attach a stabilizer material.
- Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

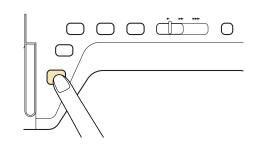


### **Basic Sewing**

- Select a stitch pattern.
- Attach monogramming foot "N".
- Place the fabric under the presser foot, pull the upper thread out to the side, and then lower the presser foot.



Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.



## **CAUTION**

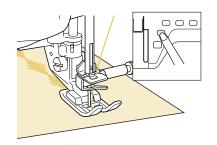
• When sewing 7 mm satin stitch patterns and the stitches are bunched, lengthen the stitch length. If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break (see "Setting the Stitch Length" on page 49).

#### n Memo

If the fabric is pulled or pushed during sewing, the pattern may not turn out correctly. Also, depending on the pattern, there may be movement to the left and right as well as front and back. Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

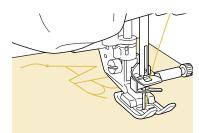
Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop sewing.

Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches.



#### <mark>Memo</mark> ۾

When sewing character stitches, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of each character.



• When sewing is completed, trim any excess thread.



#### 낙 Note

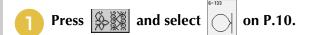
When sewing some patterns, the needle will stop in the raised position while the fabric is fed due to the operation of the needle bar separation mechanism which is used in this machine. At such times, a clicking sound different from the sound generated during sewing will be heard. This sound is normal and is not the sign of a malfunction.

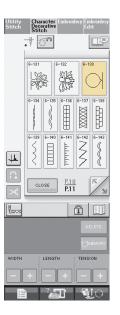
## **Making Adjustments**

Your stitch pattern may sometimes turn out poorly, depending on the type or thickness of fabric, the stabilizer material used, sewing speed, etc. If your sewing does not turn out well, sew trial stitches using the same conditions as the real sewing, and adjust the stitch pattern as explained below. If the pattern does not turn out well even after making

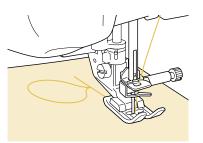
adjustments based on the 🔗 pattern, make

adjustments for each pattern individually.





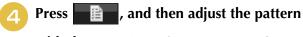
Attach monogramming foot "N" and sew the pattern.



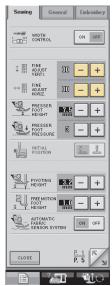


Compare the finished pattern to the illustration of the correct pattern below.





with the FINE ADJUST VERTI. or HORIZ. displays.



\* If the pattern is bunched:

Press + in the FINE ADJUST VERTI. display.

→ The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will lengthen.



\* If the pattern has gaps:

Press – in the FINE ADJUST VERTI. display.

→ The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will shorten.

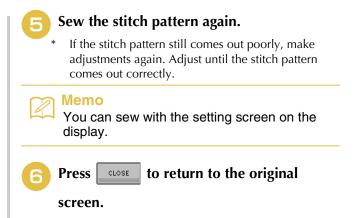


- \* If the pattern is skewed to the left:
  - Press + in the FINE ADJUST HORIZ. display.
- → The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the right.



- \* If the pattern is skewed to the right:
  - Press in the FINE ADJUST HORIZ. display.
- → The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the left.





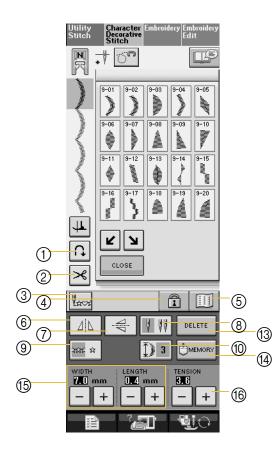
## **EDITING STITCH PATTERNS**

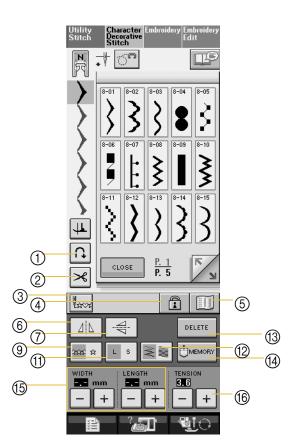
#### **Key Functions**

You can create just the finish you want using the editing functions. Make patterns larger or smaller, make mirror images, etc.

<mark>낙 Note</mark>

• Some editing functions cannot be used with certain stitch patterns. Only the functions for the displayed keys are available when a pattern is selected.





| No. | Display     | Key Name                                        | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Page |
|-----|-------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1   | U           | Automatic<br>reinforcement stitch<br>key        | Press this key to turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching mode.                                                                                                                                          | 51   |
| 2   | $\varkappa$ | Automatic thread cutting key                    | Press this key to turn on the automatic thread cutting mode.                                                                                                                                                   | 52   |
| 3   | U.szwe      | Back to beginning key                           | When sewing is stopped, press this key to return to the beginning of the pattern.                                                                                                                              | 126  |
| 4   |             | Screen lock key                                 | Press this key to lock the screen. When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings. | 55   |
| 5   |             | Image key                                       | Press this key to check large combination patterns.                                                                                                                                                            | 127  |
| 6   |             | Horizontal mirror<br>image key                  | After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a horizontal mirror image of the stitch pattern.                                                                                                    | 125  |
| 7   |             | Vertical mirror image key                       | After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a vertical mirror image of the stitch pattern.                                                                                                      | 125  |
| 8   | 44          | Needle mode<br>selection key<br>(Single/Double) | Press this key to choose single needle sewing or twin needle sewing.                                                                                                                                           | 34   |

| No.  | Display         | Key Name                           | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                           | Page     |
|------|-----------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 9    | विद्यंत्रकों कर | Single/Repeat sewing key           | Press this key to choose single stitches or continuous stitches.                                                                                                                      | 125      |
| 10   |                 | Elongation key                     | When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press this key to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.           | 125      |
| 1    | LS              | Size selection key                 | Use this key to select the size of the stitch pattern (large, small).                                                                                                                 | 124      |
| 12   | <u>NN</u>       | Thread density key                 | After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to change the thread density of the pattern.                                                                                         | 126      |
| 13   | DELETE          | Delete key                         | When you make a mistake selecting a stitch pattern, use this key to delete the mistake. When you make a mistake in combining stitch patterns, use this key to delete stitch patterns. | 118, 119 |
| (14) |                 | Memory key                         | Use this key to save stitch pattern combinations.                                                                                                                                     | 136-137  |
| 15   |                 | Stitch width and stitch length key | Shows the stitch width and stitch length of the selected stitch pattern. The machine has default settings. * If mm appears, the setting cannot be adjusted.                           | 49-50    |
| 16   |                 | Thread tension key                 | Shows the thread tension setting for the selected stitch pattern. The machine has default settings.                                                                                   | 50       |

## **Changing the Size**

Select a stitch pattern, then press **u**s to change the size of the stitch pattern. The stitch pattern will be sewn in the size highlighted on the key.

| 44                   | 4 P | DELETE |  |  |
|----------------------|-----|--------|--|--|
| 3333 33              | LS  |        |  |  |
| WIDTH LENGTH TENSION |     |        |  |  |
|                      |     |        |  |  |

Memo

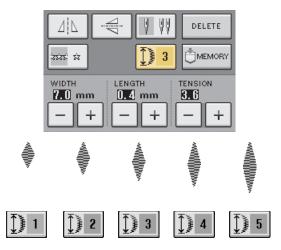
- If you continue entering stitch patterns after changing the size, those patterns will also be sewn in that size.
- You cannot change the size of combined stitch patterns once the stitch pattern is entered.

#### Actual Stitch Pattern Size



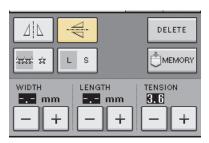
## Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

When stitch patterns are selected, press **1** to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.



## Creating a Vertical Mirror Image

To create a vertical mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press  $\boxed{-4}$ .

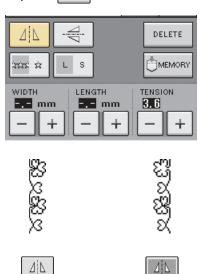






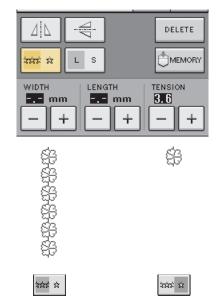
### Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

To create a horizontal mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press  $\square$ .



## Sewing a Pattern Continuously

Press **\*** to select continuous sewing or single stitch sewing.

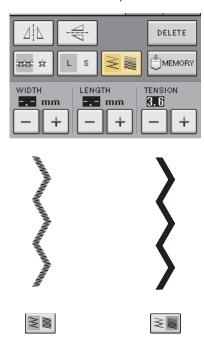


#### Memo آ

To finish a complete motif while sewing the pattern continuously, you can press the key while sewing. The machine will automatically stop when the motif is finished.

### Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

After selecting the pattern, press to select your preferred thread density.



## **A** CAUTION

If the stitches bunch when thread density is

changed to  $|\geq|$ , return the thread density to

**I** If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break.

#### n Memo

- Even if you select a new pattern after changing the thread density, the thread density remains the same until you change it.
- You cannot change thread density for a combined pattern after the combination is finished.

# Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern

When sewing character/decorative stitches, you can return to the beginning of the pattern after trial sewing or when the stitching is sewn incorrectly.



Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the

#### machine, and then press



→ Sewing returns to the beginning of the selected pattern ("W") from the point where sewing was stopped.

#### n Memo

If this key is pressed when sewing is stopped, patterns can be added at the end of a combined stitch pattern. (In this example, "!" is added.)





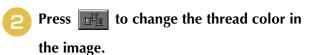
## **Checking the Image**

You can display an approximate size image of the selected stitch pattern. You can also check and change the colors of the image on the screen.





 $\rightarrow$  An image of the selected pattern is displayed.

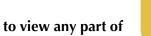




 $\rightarrow$  The color changes every time you press the button.

Press Press I to display the enlarged image.

| Utility<br>Stitch | Char<br>Deco<br>Stite | acter E<br>rative<br>h | mbroidery | Embroiders<br>Edit |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| R                 |                       |                        |           |                    |
| mm 0              | 10 20                 | 30                     | 10 50     | 60                 |
| ·-                | ~                     | Ĺ                      |           |                    |
| 10                | 2                     | <b>.</b>               |           |                    |
| 20                |                       | 5                      |           |                    |
| 30                | [                     | īη                     |           |                    |
| -                 | Ľ.                    |                        |           |                    |
| 40                | 2                     | ····                   |           |                    |
| 50                | ~ >                   | 5                      |           |                    |
| 60-               | 5                     |                        |           |                    |
| 70-               | 202                   |                        |           |                    |
| -                 |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 80                |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 90                |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 100-              |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 110               |                       |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 120               |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 130               |                       |                        |           |                    |
| 140               |                       |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       |                        | I         | t 🖗 🤤              |
| CLO               | SE                    |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       | 2                      |           |                    |
| j j               |                       | 10                     |           | ्र                 |
|                   |                       |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       |                        |           |                    |
|                   |                       |                        |           |                    |



the image that extends out of the viewable display area.

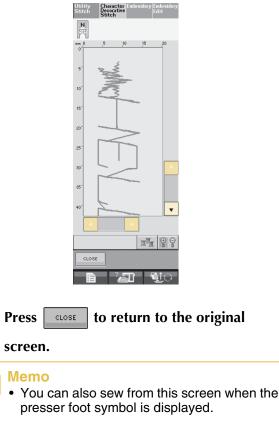
•

.

¥

٠.

Use



• Image of some patterns will display in default size only.

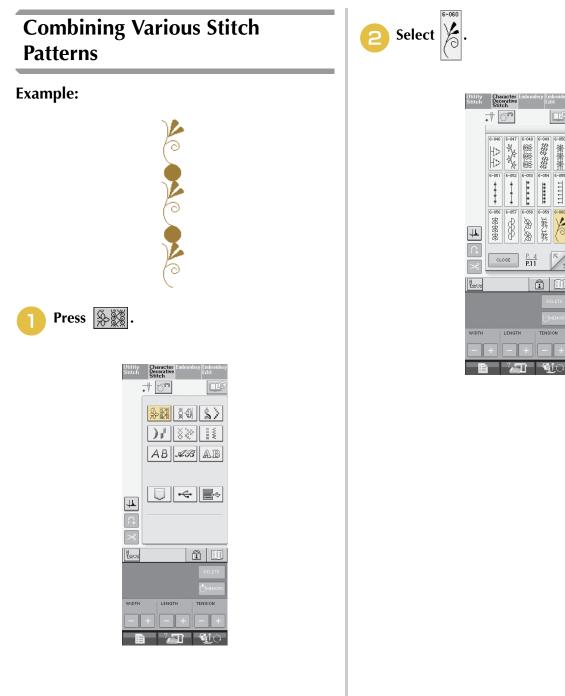
## **COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS**

You can combine many varieties of stitch patterns, such as character stitches, cross stitches or satin stitches. You can also combine stitch patterns of different sizes, mirror image stitch patterns, and others.

## **Before Combining**

Single stitch sewing is automatically selected for sewing combined patterns. If you want to sew the pattern continuously, press after finishing the stitch pattern combination.

When changing sizes, creating mirror images, or making other adjustments to a combined stitch pattern, be sure to edit the selected stitch pattern before selecting the next one. You cannot edit a stitch pattern once the next stitch pattern is selected.





CLOSE



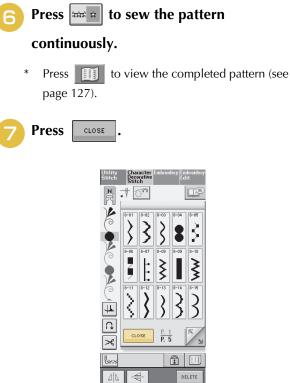
 $\rightarrow$  The display returns to the stitch selection screen.



| Utility<br>Stitch | Character<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | Embroider | y Embroidery<br>Edit |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| R                 | 167                               |           | Q\$                  |
| 6                 |                                   | ×         | \$>                  |
| 8                 | )/                                | ×××       |                      |
| Z                 | АB                                | AB.       | AB                   |
|                   |                                   | ¢         |                      |
| ×<br>             |                                   |           |                      |
| Lacos             |                                   | 2         | ) III                |
| 41                | 4                                 |           | DELETE               |
|                   | L S                               |           | MEMORY               |
| WIDTH             | m                                 |           | ENSION<br>3.6<br>- + |
|                   | ?                                 |           | গ্রাত                |

5 Select







Patterns are deleted individually starting with the last pattern entered by pressing DELETE .

L S ≷ 🗎

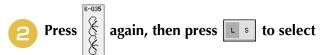
### Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns

#### **Example:**





 $\rightarrow$  The large size stitch will be selected.



the small size.



 $\rightarrow~$  The pattern is displayed in a smaller size.

3 Pres

Press to sew continuously.

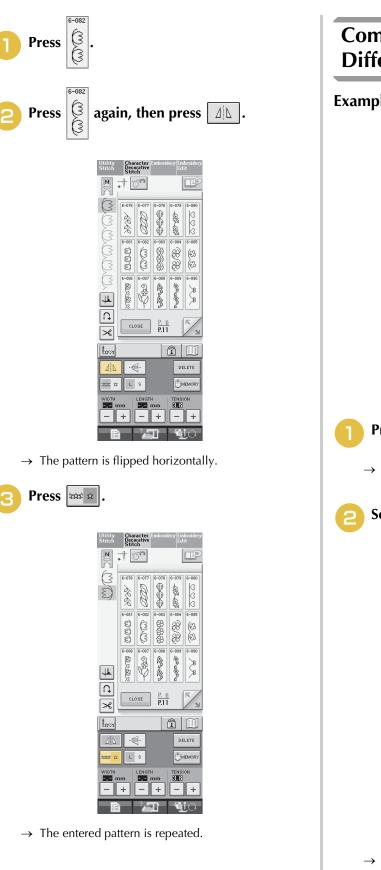


 $\rightarrow$  The entered pattern is repeated.

## Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns

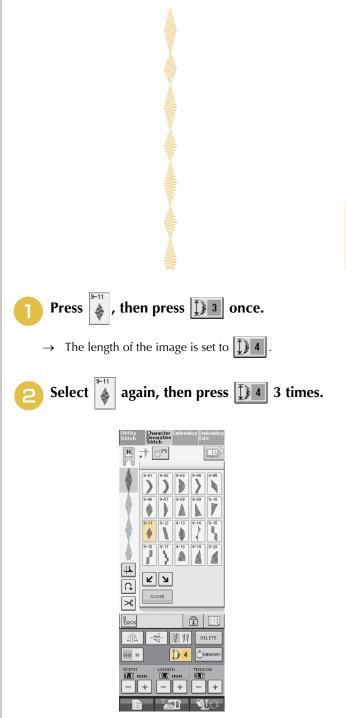
#### Example:





## **Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length**





 $\rightarrow$  The length of the image is set to 2





 $\rightarrow$  The entered pattern is repeated.

### Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

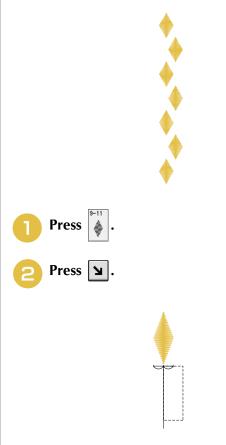
You can use the **v** keys with 7mm satin stitch patterns to create a step effect.

Stitch patterns sewn so that they create a step effect are called step stitch patterns.

- \* Press row to move the stitch pattern a distance equal to half of the stitch pattern's size to the left.
- \* Press to move the stitch pattern a distance equal to half of the stitch pattern's size to the right.



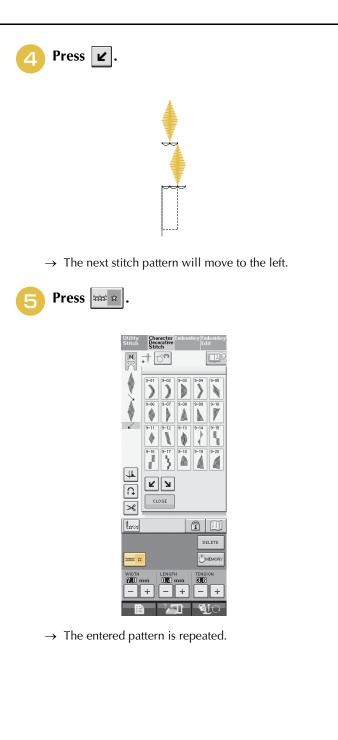
#### **Example:**

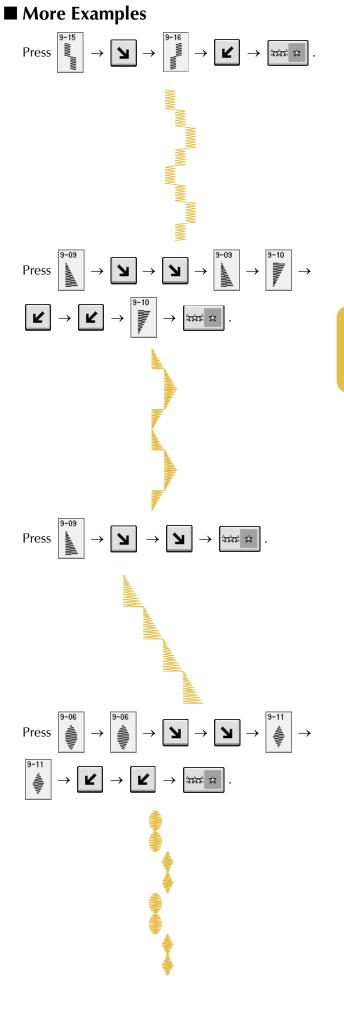


 $\rightarrow\,$  The next stitch pattern will move to the right.









Character/Decorative Stitches

# **USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION**

## **Stitch Data Precautions**

Observe the following precautions when using stitch data other than that created and saved in this machine.

### ■ Types of Stitch Data that can be Used

• In the Character/Decorative Stitch memory, only .pmu stitch data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that created using this machine may cause the machine to malfunction.

### ■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB media. Use media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Floppy disk drive
- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)

Stitch data can be recalled only.

• USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/Writer.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- XD-Picture Card

### <mark>火 Note</mark>

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).
- When a file folder is necessary to create, use a computer.

# Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used

- Compatible models: IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment
   IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems: Microsoft Windows 98SE/Me/2000/XP (Windows 98SE requires a driver. Download the driver from our Web site (www.babylock.com). In addition, only Windows 98 Second Edition can use the driver.)

### ■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the stitch data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9, "-", and "\_".
- Stitch data in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If stitch data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that stitch data cannot be retrieved by the machine.

### ■ Trademarks

- Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD Card Association.
- CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.
- Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Smart Media is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.
- Multi Media Card (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.
- xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.
- IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as  $^{\textcircled{R}}$  and  $^{\textcircled{M}}$  are not clearly described within the text.



• When disconnecting the USB cable:

Before disconnecting the USB cable, click the "Unplug or Eject Hardware" icon in the taskbar of Windows<sup>®</sup> Me/2000 or the "Safely Remove Hardware" icon in the taskbar of Windows<sup>®</sup> XP. Then, when the removable disk can safely be removed, disconnect the USB cable from the computer and the machine.



With Windows 98 SE, check that the Access lamp is not flashing before disconnecting the USB cable from the computer and the machine.

### Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory

You can save often-used stitch patterns in the machine's memory. The machine's memory can hold up to 20 stitch patterns, each holding up to 70 entries per memory pocket.

#### <u>بر</u> Note

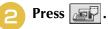
 Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

#### Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a stitch pattern.
- See page 140 for information on retrieving a saved stitch pattern.







\* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

### ■ If the Memory is Full

If this screen appears while you are trying to save a pattern on the machine's memory, the memory is too full to hold the currently selected stitch pattern. To save the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, you have to delete a previously saved stitch pattern.



Press **CANCEL** to return to the original screen without saving.

| Utility<br>Stitch | Char<br>Deco<br>Stite      | acter<br>rative<br>:h | Embroid | lery Eml<br>Edi | broidery<br>it |
|-------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---------|-----------------|----------------|
| N<br>R            | ,† [                       | 6                     |         |                 | LP             |
| 1                 |                            |                       |         |                 |                |
| 0                 | α                          | b                     | С       | d               | е              |
| 7                 | f                          | g                     | h       | i               | J              |
| τh                | k                          | Ι                     | m       | n               | 0              |
| Q.                | q                          | q                     | r       | s               | t              |
| Q<br>V            | u                          | V                     | W       | ×               | У              |
| $\geq$            | 7                          |                       |         | ,               |                |
| to sa             | enough<br>ave th<br>her pa | ie pa                 | ttern   |                 | lete           |
|                   |                            | 2 -                   |         |                 |                |
| - 182             |                            |                       |         |                 |                |



#### Choose a stitch pattern to delete.

- \* Press so the pattern saved in that pocket appears.
- \* Press if you decide not to delete the stitch pattern.



① Pockets holding saved stitch patterns

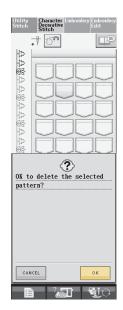
.



| Utility<br>Stitch                 | Character Embro<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | idery Embroidery<br>Edit |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                   | .† ്°                                   | DP                       |
| 홍순 눈 & 순 장 순 장 순 <b>&amp; 순 상</b> |                                         |                          |
| 2 4 g                             | CLOSE                                   | DELETE                   |
|                                   |                                         | fi II                    |
|                                   |                                         |                          |
| WIDTH                             | LENGTH                                  | TENSION                  |
|                                   | + - +                                   |                          |
|                                   | -260-                                   | <u></u>                  |
|                                   |                                         |                          |

 $\rightarrow$  A confirmation message appears.

- 1 Press 🔤 .
  - \* If you decide not to delete the stitch pattern, press



→ The machine deletes the stitch pattern, then automatically saves the new stitch pattern.

## Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)

When sending stitch patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's USB port. Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB Card Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.

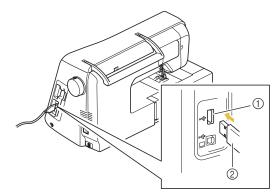
#### 🦙 Memo

Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our web site for more details.



| Utility<br>Stitch | Char<br>Deco<br>Stite | rative | Embroid      | lery Em<br>Ed | broidery<br>it |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| R                 | 1                     | 7      |              | [             | LP             |
| ī                 |                       |        |              |               |                |
| 0                 | α                     | b      | c            | d             | е              |
| 7                 | f                     | g      | h            | i             | J              |
| th                | k                     |        | m            | n             | 0              |
| 0                 | q                     | q      | r            | S             | t              |
| Q<br>V            | u                     | V      | W            | ×             | У              |
| Ĩ                 | z                     |        |              | ,             | _              |
|                   | CLO                   |        |              |               |                |
|                   |                       | -      | _            |               |                |
| $\geq$            | ABC                   | ab     | с 0-         | 9?!-          | ÄÅä∙           |
| Lave              |                       |        |              | Î             |                |
|                   |                       |        |              | DE            | LETE           |
| <b>2222</b> 22    | ] L                   | s      |              | <u>ٹ</u>      | IEMORY         |
| WIDTH             | im<br>+               |        | 1<br>mm<br>+ | TENSI<br>3.6  | on<br>+        |
|                   |                       | ?      | 0            | -             | lo-            |

Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine.



- ① USB port connector for media
- ② USB media

#### 🏹 Memo

- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.
- Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port connector. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.



without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

# Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer

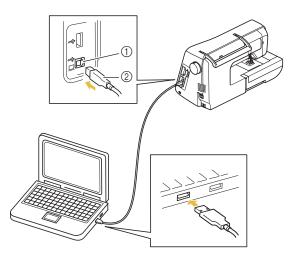
Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the stitch patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved on your computer.

#### <mark>ヒ Note</mark>

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

# Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine.

\* The USB cable can be plugged into the USB port connectors on the computer and machine whether or not they are turned on.



- ① USB port connector for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- → The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "My Computer" on the computer.

### <mark>火 Note</mark>

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a connector in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force and check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer, refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

Press EMEMORY

Press E

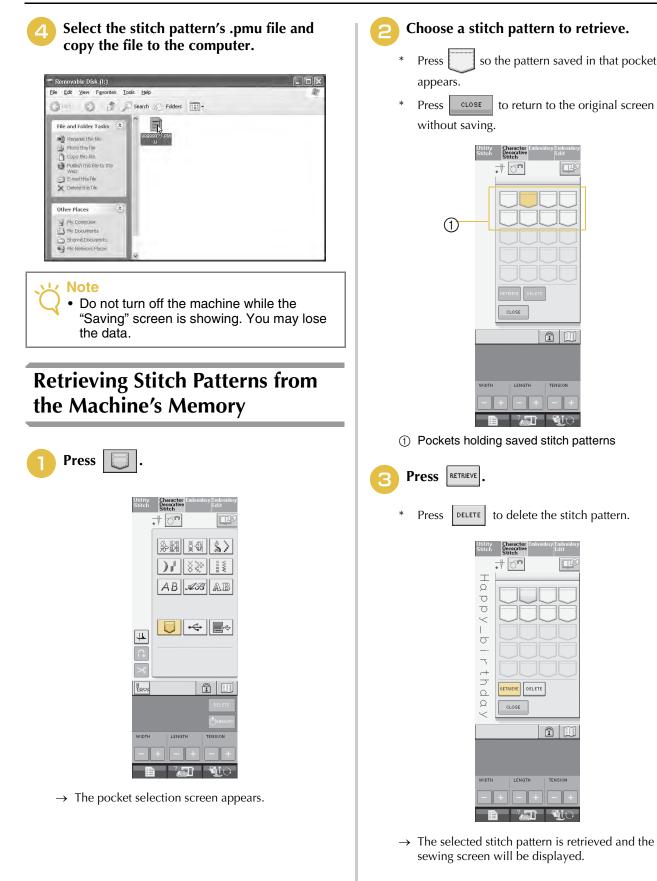




Press to return to the original screen without saving.

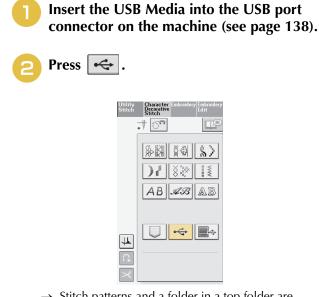
| Utility<br>Stitch | Char<br>Deco<br>Stite | acter<br>rative<br>:h | Embroid | ery Em<br>Edi | broidery<br>it |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------|---------------|----------------|
| N<br>R            | 1                     | 7                     |         |               | LP             |
| ī                 |                       |                       |         |               |                |
| <u> </u>          | α                     | b                     | С       | d             | е              |
| 7                 | f                     | g                     | h       | i             | j              |
| th                | k                     |                       | m       | n             | 0              |
| Q                 | p                     | q                     | r       | s             | t              |
| Q<br>V            | u                     | V                     | w       | ×             | У              |
|                   | z                     |                       |         | ,             | _              |
|                   |                       |                       |         |               |                |
|                   | CLO                   | _                     | c la    |               | **             |
| <u>- v    </u>    | ABC                   | ∎ an                  | C IA    |               |                |
| _                 |                       | _                     |         |               |                |
| é                 | PP                    | -                     | 2       |               | •              |
|                   |                       |                       |         |               |                |
|                   |                       |                       |         |               |                |
| CLO:              | BE                    |                       |         |               |                |
| -<br>F=           |                       | ?                     | п.      |               |                |

→ The stitch pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "My Computer".

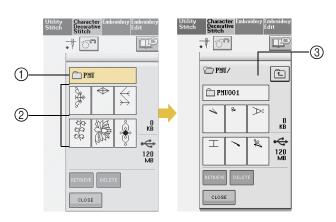


## **Recalling from USB Media**

You can recall a specific stitch pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the stitch pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the stitch pattern.



- → Stitch patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.
- Press PMU when there is a subfolder to sort two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the stitch pattern in the subfolder is displayed.
- \* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without recalling.



- ① Folder name
- ② Stitch patterns in a folder show only the first pattern of any combined patterns.
- ③ Path
- $\rightarrow$  The path shows the current folder at the top of the list.

Stitch patterns and a subfolder within a folder are displayed.

\* Press 🔲 to return to the previous folder.

Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.

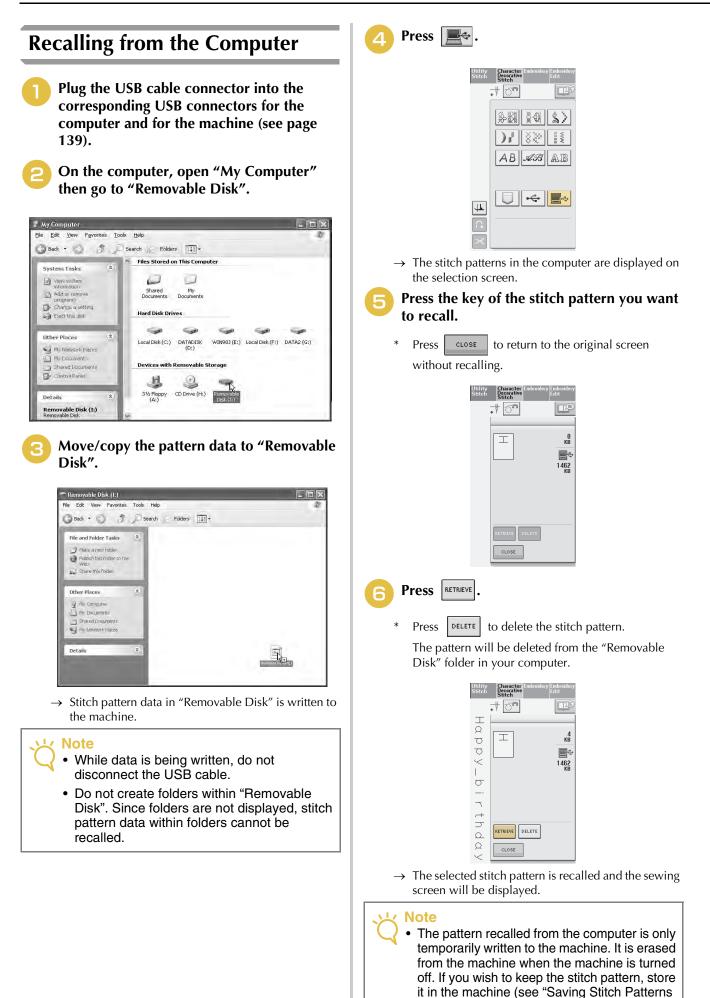
| Jtility<br>Stitch | Charac<br>Decora<br>Stitch | ter Embr | roidery Er<br>Ec | nbroidery<br>lit |
|-------------------|----------------------------|----------|------------------|------------------|
|                   | 2 PM                       | U/       |                  | ŧ                |
|                   | 🗋 PM                       | U001     |                  |                  |
|                   |                            | 4        | Ä                | 0<br>КВ          |
|                   | Т                          | /        | \$               | 120<br>MB        |
|                   | RETRIEVE                   | DELET    | E                |                  |
|                   | CLOS                       | E        |                  |                  |
|                   |                            |          |                  |                  |

Press **DELETE** to delete the stitch pattern. The pattern will be deleted from the USB media.

Press RETRIEVE



→ The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.



in the Machine's Memory" on page 136).



# Chapter **5** Embroidery

| BEFORE EMBROIDERING144                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Embroidery Step by Step144                                  |
| Attaching Embroidery Foot "W"                               |
| Attaching the Embroidery Unit                               |
| About the Embroidery Unit                                   |
| Removing the Embroidery Unit                                |
| SELECTING PATTERNS149                                       |
| Copyright Information149 Pattern Selection Screens          |
| Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Floral alphabet Patterns/     |
| Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs                      |
| Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns 152                   |
| Selecting Frame Patterns 153                                |
| Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards 154                |
| <ul> <li>About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)</li></ul> |
| VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN155                                |
| Key Functions                                               |
| PREPARING THE FABRIC157                                     |
| Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (backing) to the Fabric 157   |
| Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame 158              |
| Types of Embroidery Frames                                  |
| <ul> <li>Inserting the Fabric</li></ul>                     |
| Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges                  |
| Embroidering Small Fabrics                                  |
| <ul> <li>Embroidering Edges or Corners</li></ul>            |
| ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME 162                          |
| Removing the Embroidery Frame                               |
| CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION163                          |
| Checking the Pattern Position                               |
| Previewing the Completed Pattern 164                        |
| SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN165                             |
| Sewing Attractive Finishes 165                              |
| Embroidery Needle Plate Cover 165                           |
| Sewing Embroidery Patterns 166                              |
| <ul> <li>When Threading Manually</li></ul>                  |
| ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY                           |
| PROCESS170                                                  |
| If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread 170                        |
| If the Thread Breaks During Sewing 171                      |
| Restarting from the Beginning 171                           |
| Automatically Resuming Embroidery When the Power            |
| Goes Off 172                                                |

Manually Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power .. 173

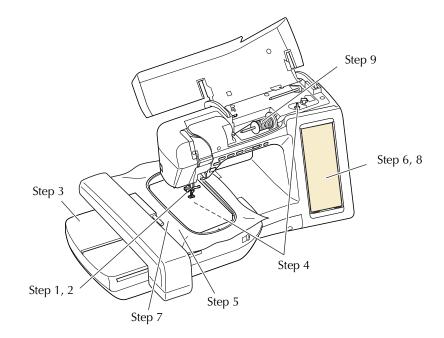
MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS ..... 174

| Adjusting Thread Tension                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | .174                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Correct Thread Tension                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                     |
| <ul> <li>Upper Thread is Too Tight</li> <li>Upper Thread is Too Loose</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                     |
| Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 1/4                                                                                                 |
| (END COLOR TRIM)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | .175                                                                                                |
| Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH TRIM)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | .175                                                                                                |
| Selecting the length of JUMP STITCH not to trim                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 176                                                                                                 |
| Adjusting the Embroidery Speed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | .176                                                                                                |
| Changing the Thread Color Display                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | .177                                                                                                |
| Changing the Embroidery Frame Display                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | .178                                                                                                |
| REVISING THE PATTERN                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 179                                                                                                 |
| Changing the Pattern Position                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | .179                                                                                                |
| Aligning the Pattern and the Needle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                     |
| Changing the Size                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | .181                                                                                                |
| Rotating the Pattern                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | .182                                                                                                |
| Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | .183                                                                                                |
| Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                     |
| Patterns Only)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | .183                                                                                                |
| Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | .184                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                     |
| USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 185                                                                                                 |
| USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                     |
| Embroidery Data Precautions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | .185<br>185                                                                                         |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | .185<br>185                                                                                         |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used<br>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | .185<br>185<br>185                                                                                  |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used<br>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following<br>Specifications can be Used<br>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186                                                                    |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used<br>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following<br>Specifications can be Used<br>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data<br>Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186                                                             |
| <ul> <li>Embroidery Data Precautions</li> <li>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used</li> <li>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used</li> <li>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used</li> <li>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data</li> <li>Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186                                                      |
| <ul> <li>Embroidery Data Precautions</li> <li>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used</li> <li>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used</li> <li>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used</li> <li>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data</li> <li>Trajima (.dst) Embroidery Data</li> <li>Trademarks</li> <li>Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187                                               |
| <ul> <li>Embroidery Data Precautions</li> <li>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used</li> <li>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used</li> <li>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used</li> <li>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data</li> <li>Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187                                               |
| <ul> <li>Embroidery Data Precautions</li> <li>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used</li> <li>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used</li> <li>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used</li> <li>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data</li> <li>Trajima (.dst) Embroidery Data</li> <li>Trademarks</li> <li>Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory</li> <li>If the Memory is Full</li> </ul>                                                                                                                 | .185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>.187<br>187                                       |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used<br>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following<br>Specifications can be Used<br>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data<br>Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data<br>Trademarks<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory<br>If the Memory is Full<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media                                                                                                                                        | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187<br>187<br>187                                 |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used<br>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following<br>Specifications can be Used<br>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data<br>Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data<br>Trademarks<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory<br>If the Memory is Full<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media<br>(Commercially Available)                                                                                                            | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>187                          |
| Embroidery Data Precautions<br>Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used<br>Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used<br>Computers and Operating Systems with the Following<br>Specifications can be Used<br>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data<br>Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data<br>Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data<br>Trademarks<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory<br>If the Memory is Full<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media<br>(Commercially Available)<br>Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>189<br>.190                         |
| Embroidery Data Precautions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | .185<br>185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>190<br>191                   |
| Embroidery Data Precautions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | .185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>187<br>191<br>.191<br>.191   |
| Embroidery Data Precautions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | .185<br>185<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>186<br>187<br>187<br>189<br>.190<br>.191<br>.191<br>.192<br>194 |

# **BEFORE EMBROIDERING**

# **Embroidery Step by Step**

Follow the steps below to prepare the machine for embroidery.



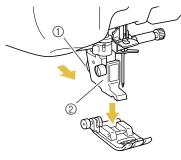
| Step # | Aim                         | Action                                                                           | Page |
|--------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1      | Presser foot attachment     | Attach embroidery foot "W".                                                      | 145  |
| 2      | Checking the needle*        | Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. *                                               | 41   |
| 3      | Embroidery unit attachment  | Attach the embroidery unit.                                                      | 146  |
| 4      | Bobbin thread setup**       | For the bobbin thread, wind embroidery bobbin thread and set it in place.        | 23   |
| 5      | Fabric preparation          | Attach a stabilizer material to the fabric, and hoop it in the embroidery frame. | 157  |
| 6      | Pattern selection           | Turn the main power to ON, and select an embroidery pattern.                     | 149  |
| 7      | Embroidery frame attachment | Attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit.                              | 162  |
| 8      | Checking the layout         | Check and adjust the size and position of the embroidery.                        | 163  |
| 9      | Embroidery thread setup     | Set up embroidery thread according to the pattern.                               | 29   |

\* It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavy weight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example; denim, puffy foam, etc.).

\*\* Use the alternate bobbin case for any embroidery bobbin thread other than the recommended embroidery bobbin thread (item BBT-W, page 7).

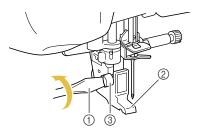
# Attaching Embroidery Foot "W" CAUTION • When attaching a presser foot, always press on the screen. You may accidentally press the "Start/Stop" button and possibly cause injury. Be sure to use embroidery foot "W" when doing embroidery. Using another presser foot may cause the needle to strike the presser foot, causing the needle to bend or break and possibly cause injury. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. $\bigcirc$ Press wi () $\rightarrow$ The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked. Raise the presser foot lever.

Push the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.

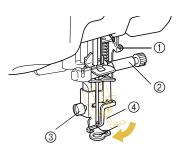


- ① Black button
- ② Presser foot holder
- $\rightarrow$  Remove the presser foot from the presser foot holder.

# **5** Use the included screwdriver to loosen the screw of the presser foot holder, then remove the presser foot holder.

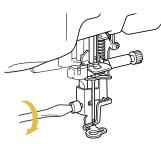


- ① Screwdriver
- ② Presser foot holder
- ③ Presser foot holder screw
- $\rightarrow$  Remove the presser foot holder.
- 6 Position embroidery foot "W" on the presser foot bar so that the arm of embroidery foot "W" is behind the needle holder and the wiper is behind the needle.



- ① Arm
- ② Needle holder
- ③ Presser foot holder screw
- ④ Wiper

Hold the embroidery foot in place with your right hand, and then use the included screwdriver to securely tighten the presser foot holder screw.



# CAUTION

Use the included screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw of the presser foot holder. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and possibly cause injury.

### Press to unlock all keys and

#### buttons.

 $\rightarrow$  All keys and operation buttons are unlocked, and the previous screen is displayed.

# Attaching the Embroidery Unit

### About the Embroidery Unit

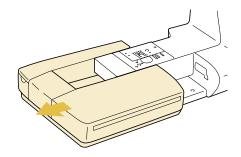


- Do not move the machine with the embroidery unit attached. The embroidery unit could fall off and cause injury.
- Keep your hands and foreign objects away from the embroidery carriage and frame when the machine is embroidering. Otherwise, injury may result.
- If the embroidery unit could not be initialized correctly, a buzzer will sound. If this happens, go through the initialization process again. This is not a malfunction.

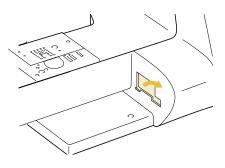
#### Note

- You can also sew utility/decorative stitches with the embroidery unit attached. Set the feed dog position switch on the embroidery unit to the appropriate setting.
- Be sure to turn off the power before installing the embroidery unit. Otherwise, the machine may be damaged.
- Do not touch the inner connector of the embroidery unit. The pins on the embroidery unit connection may be damaged.
- Do not apply strong force to the embroidery unit carriage or pick up the unit by the carriage. Otherwise, the embroidery unit may be damaged.
- Store the embroidery unit in the proper storage case.

Turn the main power to OFF, and remove the flat bed attachment.

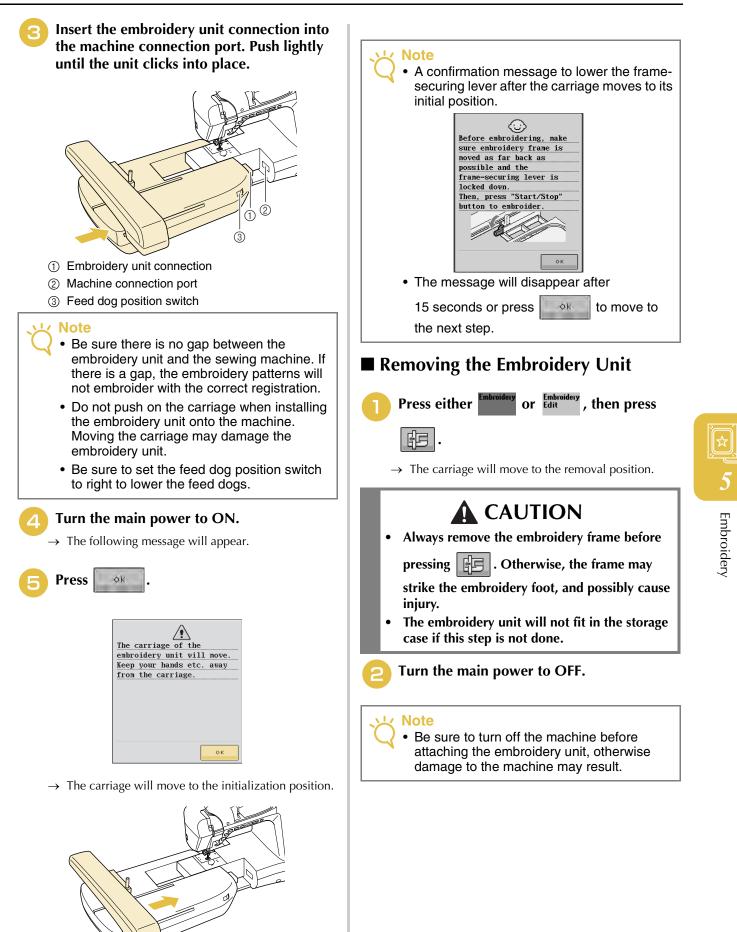


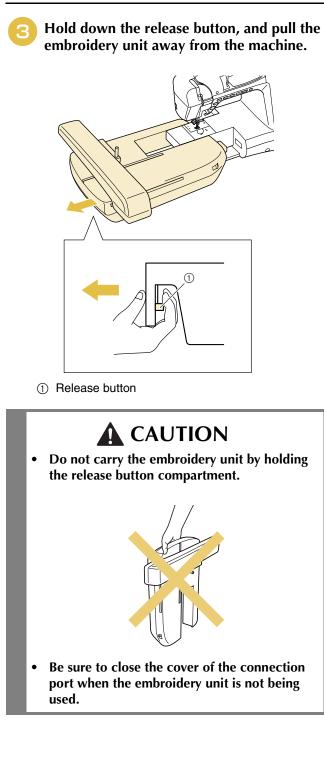
Open the cover of the connection port.



# **CAUTION**

Be sure to replace the cover when the embroidery unit is not installed.





# **SELECTING PATTERNS**

### Copyright Information

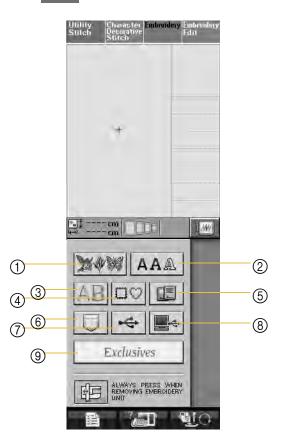
The patterns stored in the sewing machine and embroidery cards are intended for private use only. Any public or commercial use of copyrighted patterns is an infringement of copyright law and is strictly prohibited. There are many character and decorative embroidery patterns stored in the machine's memory (see the "QUICK

REFERENCE GUIDE" for a full summary of patterns in the machine's memory). You can also use patterns from the embroidery cards (sold separately).

Once the machine has finished the initialization and the carriage has moved to the start position, the pattern type selection screen will display.

If another screen is displayed, press

to display the screen below.



- ① Embroidery patterns
- ② Alphabet character patterns
- ③ Floral alphabet patterns
- ④ Frame patterns
- ⑤ Patterns from an embroidery card (sold separately)
- ⑥ Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 191)
- ⑦ Patterns saved in USB media (see page 191)
- ⑧ Patterns saved on the computer (see page 192)
- (9) Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs

### Pattern Selection Screens

There are 5 categories of patterns in this machine.

selection screen for that category.

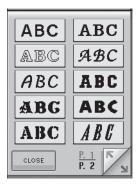




#### Exclusives Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs

| Flowers Borders Lace        |
|-----------------------------|
| Occasions Appliqué Children |
| Sports Animals              |
| Nancy Zuiman                |
| CLOSE                       |

AAA Alphabet characters



#### Flowers Flowers

|      | かわ    | -            |     |
|------|-------|--------------|-----|
|      | 1. B. |              |     |
| 0    | 0     | 150          | Ć.  |
|      | -     | aller .      | -   |
|      | 2.8%  | 9            | 417 |
| CLOS | BÉ    | P. 1<br>P. 2 | 1   |

Occasions

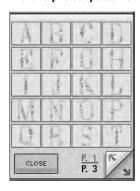
| te Hin<br>151 |          | \$                   | *  |
|---------------|----------|----------------------|----|
| 18 (5         | R        | 言                    | 1  |
|               | 5.<br>19 | X                    | -  |
| 1             | 1        |                      |    |
| L.M.          | 0.00     | WERRIC<br>GRISTAVIST | 0  |
| CLOS          | BE       | P. 1<br>P. 2         | K/ |





Floral alphabet patterns

P. 1 P. 3



36

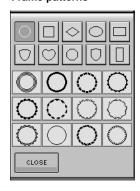
nle

1800 XXX

<u>P. 1</u> P. 6



indicates that there is more than one pattern









Borders

Borders

G.

8.4X

 $\langle \rangle \rangle$ 

 $\langle \cdot \rangle$ 

CLOSE



Animals Animals



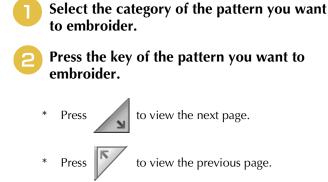






| and the second |       | La           | *   |
|----------------|-------|--------------|-----|
| -              | -1747 | 355          | ť   |
| *              |       | *10*         | ×.  |
| *              | K     | ¥            | 4   |
| S              | æ,    | - LERGE      | No. |
| CLO:           | BÉ    | P. 1<br>P. 2 | K/  |

## Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Floral alphabet Patterns/ **Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery** Designs





 $\rightarrow$  The selected pattern is displayed.

#### Press 1 to create a mirror image of the

### pattern as needed.

З

If you make a mistake selecting the pattern, press the \* key of the pattern you want to embroider.



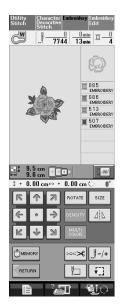


 $\rightarrow$  The sewing screen is displayed.

Proceed to see "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 155 to embroider the pattern.

To return to the previous screen to select another \*

pattern, press RETURN



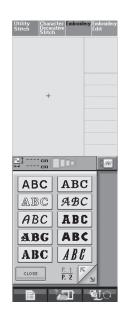
## Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns



Press AAA.



Press the key of the font you want to embroider.



3 Press ABC abc 0≁9?!- ÄÅä- to change the

# selection screen, and then enter the characters that you want to embroider.

\* To enter a space, press

from large to medium to small.

- If you want to change the size of a character, select the character and then press to change the size. The size changes each time you press the key,
- \* If you make a mistake, press **DELETE** to erase the mistake.
- \* If the pattern is too small to see clearly, you can use the CHECK key to check it.



### ך Memo

4

If you continue adding characters after changing the size, the new characters will be entered in the new size.

You cannot change the size of the entered characters after combining character stitch patterns.





 $\rightarrow$  The sewing screen is displayed.

#### Proceed to see "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 155 to embroider the pattern.

\* To return to the previous screen to select another

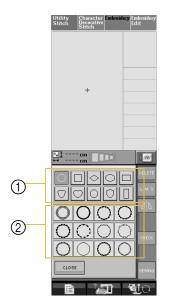
### pattern, press RETURN



### Selecting Frame Patterns



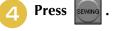
Press the key of the frame shape you want to embroider in the top part of the screen.



- ① Frame shapes
- ② Frame patterns
- → Various frame patterns are displayed at the bottom part of the screen.

# Press the key of the frame pattern you want to embroider.

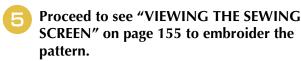
- <sup>4</sup> If you make a mistake selecting the pattern, press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.
- $\rightarrow\,$  The selected pattern is displayed on the screen.



З



 $\rightarrow$  The sewing screen is displayed.



\* To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press



### Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards

### About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)

- Use only embroidery cards manufactured for this machine. Using unauthorized cards may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
- Embroidery cards sold in foreign countries cannot be used with this machine.
- Store embroidery cards in the hard case.
- Please see your Baby Lock retailer for embroidery cards available.

#### <mark>とく Note</mark>

• Only insert or remove the embroidery card

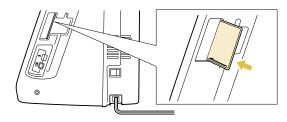
when is displayed, or when the

machine is turned off.

 Do not insert the card in a direction other than that shown by the arrow on the card, and do not force the card into the slot strongly. Do not put any object except for the embroidery cards into the slot. Otherwise, your machine may be damaged.

# Insert the card completely into the slot on the right side of the machine.

\* Insert the embroidery card so that the end with a printed arrow is facing the front.







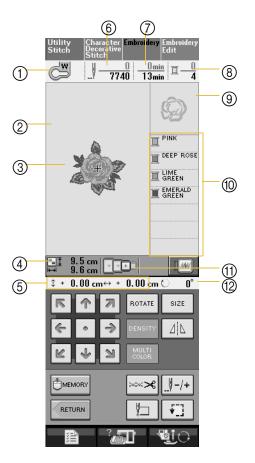
 $\rightarrow$  The patterns on the embroidery card are displayed on the selection screen.

**3** Follow the steps on page 151 to select a pattern.

# Selecting Patterns from USB media/Computer

To recall patterns from the computer or USB media, see pages 191 through 193.

# **VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN**

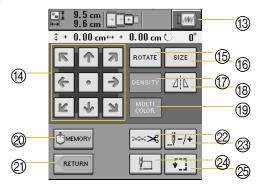


① Shows the presser foot code.

- Attach embroidery foot "W" for all embroidery projects. When the foot presser symbol is displayed on the screen, you are able to sew.
- O Shows the boundary for embroidering with the extra large frame (30 cm  $\times$  18 cm (approx. 12 inches  $\times$  7 inches)).
- ③ Shows a preview of the selected pattern.
- ④ Shows the size of the selected pattern.
- ⑤ Shows how far the sewing position is from the center (when you move the sewing position).
- (6) Shows how many stitches are in the selected pattern and how many stitches have been sewn so far.
- ⑦ Shows the time necessary to sew the pattern, and the time already spent sewing the pattern (not including time for changing and automatically trimming the thread).
- (3) Shows the number of colors in the selected pattern, and the number of the color currently being sewn.
- (9) Shows the part of the embroidery that will be sewn with the first thread color.
- 1 Shows the order the colors are sewn in.
- Shows the embroidery frames that can be used for the selected pattern. Be sure to use the proper frame (see page 158).
- ② Shows the degree of rotation of the pattern.
- \* There is an explanation of each key's function on the next page.

### **Key Functions**

Using these keys, you can change the size of the pattern, rotate the pattern, etc.



| No. | Display                          | Key Name                                                                                                                                                | Explanation                                                                                                                                                             | Page    |
|-----|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 13  |                                  | Image key                                                                                                                                               | Press this key for a preview of the sewn image.                                                                                                                         |         |
| (4) | К (+ ) /<br>К (+ ) /<br>К (+ ) / | Arrow keys<br>(  Center key)                                                                                                                            | Press an arrow key to move the pattern in the direction shown by the arrow.<br>(Press the Center key to return the pattern to the center of the embroidery<br>area.)    |         |
| 15  | ROTATE                           | Rotate key                                                                                                                                              | Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, 10 degrees or 90 degrees at a time.                                                          |         |
| 16  | SIZE                             | Size key                                                                                                                                                | Press this key to change the size of the pattern.                                                                                                                       |         |
| 17  | DENSITY                          | Density key Press this key to change the density of alphabet character or frame patterns.                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                         | 183     |
| 18  |                                  | Horizontal mirror<br>image key                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                         |         |
| 19  | MULTI<br>COLOR                   | Multi color key Press this key to change the color of each letter when sewing alphabet character patterns.                                              |                                                                                                                                                                         | 184     |
| 20  |                                  | Memory key                                                                                                                                              | Saves a pattern in the machine's memory, USB media or a computer.                                                                                                       |         |
| 2)  | RETURN                           | Return key                                                                                                                                              | Press this key to return to the pattern type selection screen.                                                                                                          |         |
| 2   | ~~ <b>`</b> *                    | Cut/Tension key Press this key to specify thread tension, automatic thread cutting, thread trimming or the length of the jump stitch not to be trimmed. |                                                                                                                                                                         | 174-175 |
| 3   | +/+                              | Forward/Back key                                                                                                                                        | d/Back key Press this key to move the needle forward or back in the pattern; useful if the thread breaks while sewing or if you want to start again from the beginning. |         |
| 24  |                                  | Starting point key                                                                                                                                      | Press this key to move the needle start position to align the needle with the pattern position.                                                                         |         |
| 29  | <b>F</b> ]]                      | Trial key                                                                                                                                               | Press this key to check the position of the pattern. The embroidery frame moves to the desired position so you can check that there is enough space to sew the pattern. | 163     |

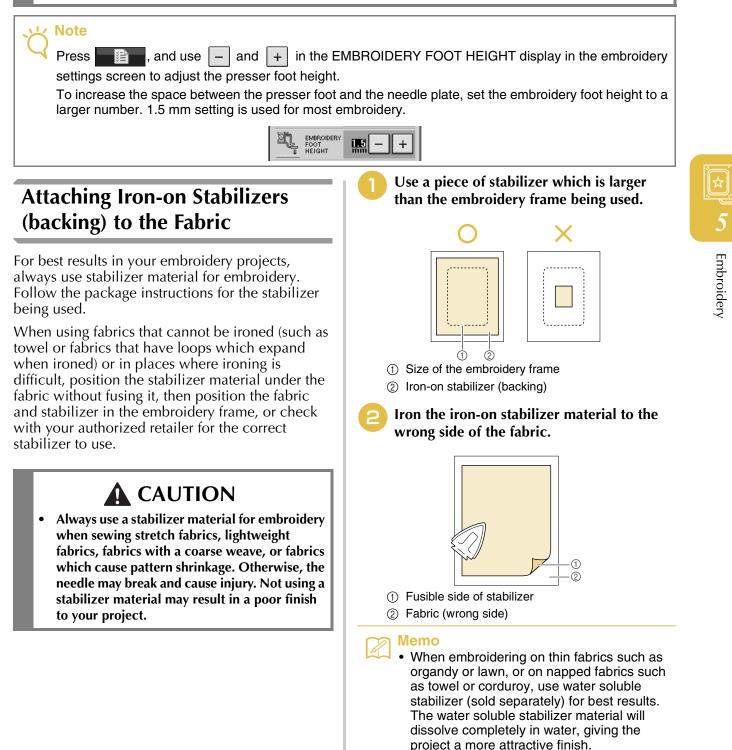
#### <mark>と、Note</mark>

• Some operations or functions are not available for certain patterns. If the key display is light gray, you cannot use that function or operation with the selected pattern.

# **PREPARING THE FABRIC**

# **A** CAUTION

- Use fabrics with a thickness of less than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch). Using fabrics thicker than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) may cause the needle to break.
- When using layers with thicker batting etc., you can sew more attractive embroidery by adjusting the embroidery presser foot height in the embroidery settings screen (see below).
- In the case of thick terry cloth towels we recommend that you place a piece of water soluble stabilizer on the top surface of the towel. This will help to reduce the nap of the toweling and result in more attractive embroidery.



# Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame

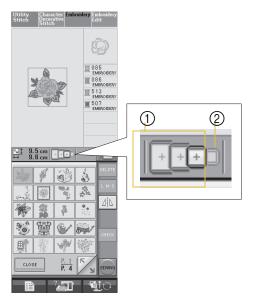
### **Types of Embroidery Frames**

| Extra Large                                                                                                       | Large                                                                                                                                                                       | Medium                                                                                  | Small                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                         |                                                    |
| Can embroider an area                                                                                             | Can embroider an area                                                                                                                                                       | Can embroider an area                                                                   | Can embroider an area                              |
| 30 cm × 18 cm                                                                                                     | 18 cm × 13 cm                                                                                                                                                               | 10 cm × 10 cm                                                                           | 2 cm × 6 cm                                        |
| (approx. 12 inches $\times$ 7 inches)                                                                             | (approx. 7 inches $\times$ 5 inches)                                                                                                                                        | (approx. 4 inches $\times$ 4 inches)                                                    | (approx. 1 inch $\times$ 2-1/2 inches)             |
| Use when embroidering<br>connected or combined<br>characters or patterns, or when<br>embroidering large patterns. | Use when embroidering patterns<br>between 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm (approx.<br>4 inches $\times$ 4 inches) and<br>18 cm $\times$ 13 cm (approx. 7 inches<br>$\times$ 5 inches). | Use when embroidering patterns<br>under 10 cm x 10 cm<br>(approx. 4 inches × 4 inches). | Use for embroidering names or very small patterns. |

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

• Optional embroidery frame 26 cm × 16 cm (approx. 10-1/4 inches × 6-1/4 inches) can also be used.

Select a frame that matches the pattern size. Frame options are displayed on the LCD.



- ① Can be used
- ② Cannot be used

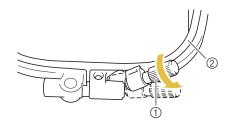
# **CAUTION**

• If you use a frame that is too small, the presser foot may strike the frame during sewing and cause injury.

### ■ Inserting the Fabric

### <mark>ヒ Note</mark>

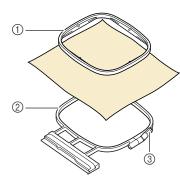
- If the fabric is placed loose in the embroidery frame, the embroidery design will sew out poorly. Insert the fabric on a level surface, and gently stretch the fabric taut in the frame. Follow the steps below to insert the fabric correctly.
- Lift-up and loosen the frame adjustment screw and remove the inner frame.



- ① Frame adjustment screw
- 2 Inner frame

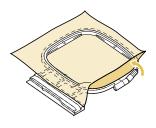
Lay the fabric right side up on top of the outer frame.

Re-insert the inner frame making sure to align the inner frame's  $\triangle$  with the outer frame's  $\bigtriangledown$ .



- ① Inner frame
- Outer frame
- ③ Frame adjustment screw

3 Slightly tighten the frame adjustment screw, and then remove the slack in the fabric by pulling on the edges and corners. Do not loosen the screw.



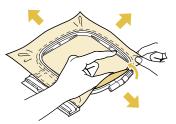


Δ

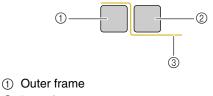
When using the extra large frame, tighten the adjustment screws at the top and bottom of the frame, so that the spaces at the top and bottom of the frame are equal.



- Gently stretch the fabric taut, and tighten the frame adjustment screw to keep the fabric from loosening after stretching.
- \* After stretching the fabric, make sure the fabric is taut.



\* Make sure the inside and outside frames are even before you start embroidering.



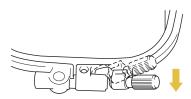
- Inner frame
- ③ Fabric



Stretch the fabric from all four corners and all four edges. While stretching the fabric, tighten the frame adjustment screw.



Return the frame adjustment screw to its initial position.

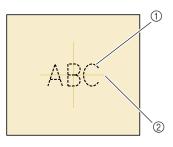


### ■ Using the Embroidery Sheet

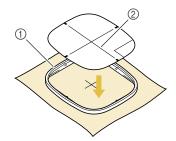
When you want to embroider the pattern in a particular place, use the embroidery sheet with the frame.



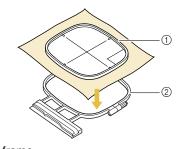
With a chalk pen, mark the area of the fabric you want to embroider.



- ① Embroidery pattern
- ② Mark
- Place the embroidery sheet on the inner frame. Align the guide lines on the embroidery sheet with the mark you made on the fabric.

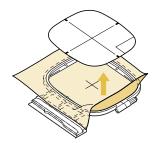


- ① Inner frame
- ② Guide line
- Gently stretch the fabric so there are no folds or wrinkles, and press the inner frame into the outer frame.



- ① Inner frame
- ② Outer frame

Remove the embroidery sheet.

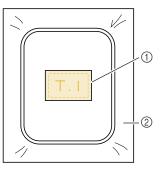


## Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges

Use an embroidery stabilizer to provide extra support. After embroidering, remove the stabilizer carefully. Attach the stabilizer as shown in the examples below. We recommend using a stabilizer for embroidery.

### **Embroidering Small Fabrics**

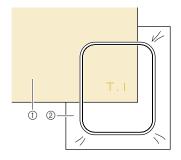
Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.



- ① Fabric
- ② Stabilizer

### Embroidering Edges or Corners

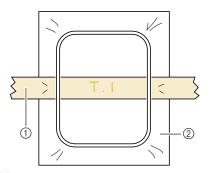
Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.



Fabric
 Stabilizer

# **Embroidering Ribbons or Tape** Secure with double-sided tape or a temporary spray

adhesive.



- ① Ribbon or tape
- ② Stabilizer



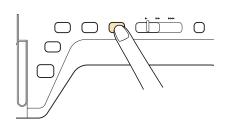
# ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME

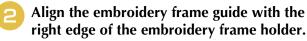


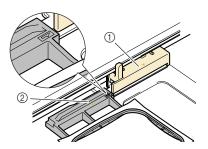
Wind and insert the bobbin before attaching the embroidery frame.



Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.





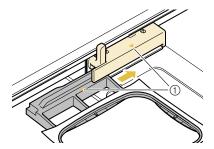


① Embroidery frame holder

② Embroidery frame guide

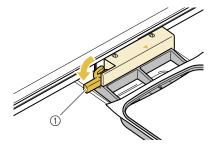
Slide the embroidery frame into the holder,

making sure to align the embroidery frame's  $\triangle$  with the holder's  $\bigtriangledown$  .



① Arrow mark

**4** Lower the frame-securing lever to be level with the frame to secure the embroidery frame in the embroidery frame holder.



① Frame-securing lever

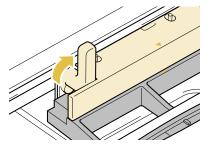
# 

• If the frame-securing lever is not lowered, the embroidery pattern may not sew out correctly or the presser foot may strike the embroidery frame and cause injury.

### **Removing the Embroidery Frame**

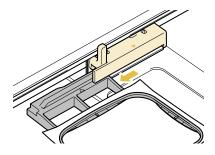


Raise the frame-securing lever.





Pull the embroidery frame toward you.



🗄 , press the key for the position

# **CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION**

The pattern is normally positioned in the center of the embroidery frame. You can check the layout before starting embroidery and change the position.

# **Checking the Pattern Position**

The embroidery frame moves and shows the pattern position. Watch the frame closely to make sure the pattern will be sewn in the right place.





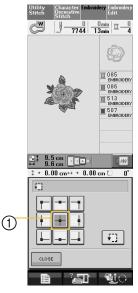
 $\rightarrow$  The following screen is displayed.

that you want to check.

+

From 🕴

2



- ① Selected position
- → The needle will move to the selected position on the pattern.



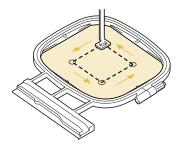
Press

3

CLOSE

To see the entire embroidering area, press

. The embroidery frame moves and shows the embroidery area.



# **CAUTION**

• Make sure the needle is up when the embroidery frame is moving. If the needle is down, it could break and result in injury.

# Previewing the Completed Pattern



→ An image of the pattern as it will be embroidered appears.



#### used in the preview.

- \* Frames displayed in light gray cannot be selected.
- \* Press **C** to see a full screen preview.
- \* The pattern can be sewn as it appears in the following display.



### Memo

You can begin sewing from this screen by pressing the "Start/Stop" button.



**RETURN** to return to the original

screen.

# SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN

## **Sewing Attractive Finishes**

There are many factors that go into sewing beautiful embroidery. Using the appropriate stabilizer (see page 157) and hooping the fabric in the frame (see page 158) are two important factors mentioned earlier. Another important point is the appropriateness of the needle and thread being used. See the explanation of threads below.

| Thread | <br>Rayon, polyester, or cotton embroidery thread is recommended for use with this machine.<br>Other embroidery threads may not yield optimum results.                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | Use embroidery bobbin thread intended for use with this machine.<br>When using other kinds of embroidery bobbin thread, use the alternate bobbin case (pink screw) included<br>with this machine (the bobbin case originally installed in the machine has a green screw). (See page 226 for<br>how to remove the bobbin case.) |

#### א <mark>Memo</mark>

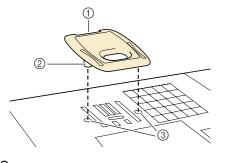
If you use threads other than those listed above, the embroidery may not sew out correctly.

### <mark>ヒ Note</mark>

- Do not leave objects in the range of motion of the embroidery frame. The frame may strike the object and cause a poor finish to the embroidery pattern.
- When embroidering on large garments (especially jackets or other heavy fabrics), do not let the fabric hang over the table. Otherwise, the embroidery unit cannot move freely, and the pattern may not turn out as planned.

### Embroidery Needle Plate Cover

Under some conditions, based on the type of fabric, stabilizer, or thread being used, there may be some looping in the upper thread. In this case, attach the included embroidery needle plate cover to the needle plate. Attach the cover by inserting the two projections on the underside of the cover into the notches on the needle plate as shown below.



- ① Groove
- ② Projection
- ③ Notch

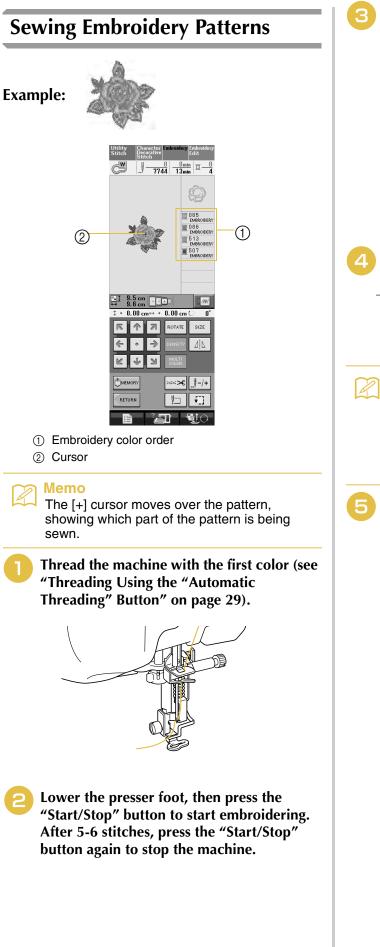
To remove the embroidery needle plate cover, place your fingernail in the groove and lift the plate out.

# **CAUTION**

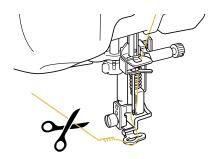
• Push the embroidery needle plate cover as far as possible to attach it. If the embroidery needle plate cover is not securely attached, it may cause the needle to break.

#### ソン Note

 Do not use the embroidery needle plate cover for any applications other than embroidery.



Trim the excess thread at the start of the color. If the end of the thread is under the presser foot, raise the presser foot, then trim the excess thread.





#### Press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering.

 $\rightarrow$  When the first color is completely sewn, the machine will automatically trim the threads and stop. The presser foot will then automatically be raised. On the embroidery color order display, the next color will move to the top.

#### Memo

If there is thread left over from the beginning of sewing, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the threads at the beginning.

Remove the thread for the first color from the machine. Thread the machine with the next color.



Repeat the same steps for embroidering the remaining colors.



 $\rightarrow$  When the last color is sewn, "Finish sewing" will

oĸ appear on the display. Press , and the display will return to the original screen.

#### Memo

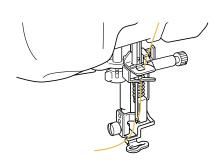
The Thread Trimming Function is originally set to trim excess thread jumps (threads linking parts of the color steps, etc.). Depending on the type of thread and fabric that are used, an end of the upper thread may remain on the surface of the fabric at the beginning of the stitching. After embroidering is finished, cut off this excess thread.

\*If the setting has been turned off, trim the excess thread jumps using scissors after the pattern is finished.

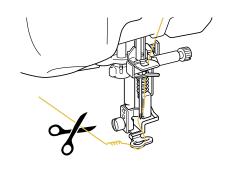
See page 175 for information on the thread trimming function.

### When Threading Manually

Thread the machine manually with the first color (see "Threading Manually" on page 31).



- Lower the presser foot, then press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering. After 5-6 stitches, press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop the machine.
- Trim the excess thread at the start of the color. If the end of the thread is under the presser foot, raise the presser foot, then trim the excess thread.



#### Memo

If there is thread left over from the beginning of sewing, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the threads at the beginning.

Press the "Start/Stop" button again to restart the machine.

**Repeat steps 4 and 5 from the previous** section.

### Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué

There are some patterns which call for an appliqué inside the pattern. Prepare the base fabric and the appliqué fabric (appliqué piece).

When sewing an embroidery pattern with an appliqué, the color sewing order display shows "Appliqué Material", "Appliqué Position", "Appliqué", and then the sewing order of the colors around the appliqué.

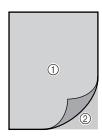
### Memo

Depending on the thread color display setting,

the display may show

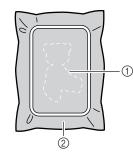


Attach an iron-on stabilizer to the wrong side of the appliqué material.



- ① Appliqué material (cotton, felt, etc.)
- Iron-on stabilizer

Place the appliqué material into the embroidery frame, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the outline of the appliqué.



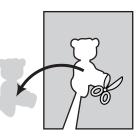
- Outline of appliqué
- ② Appliqué material

### 🦙 Memo

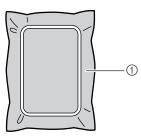
The embroidery procedure is the same as the basic procedure explained on pages 166 through 167.

→ The machine will sew around the outline of the appliqué pieces and will then stop.

- 3 Remove the appliqué material from the embroidery frame, and then cut carefully along the stitching. After cutting, remove all of the stitching thread carefully.
  - \* Carefully cut out the pattern on the outline you just sewed. Do not cut inside the stitching line, as the appliqué fabric will not be caught by the appliqué stitch.



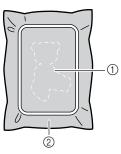
Place the base material into the embroidery frame.



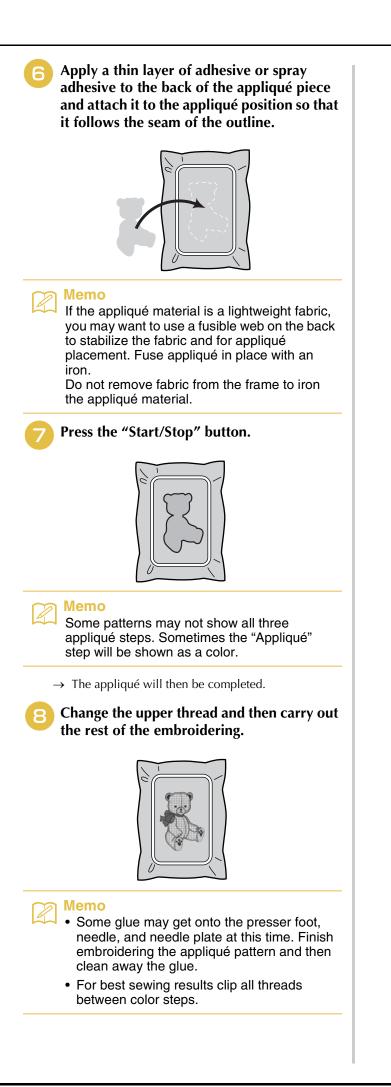
① Base material

# Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the position of the appliqué.

\* Use the same thread color you plan to use when attaching the appliqué in step 7.



- ① Position of appliqué
- ② Base material
- → The machine will sew around the position of the appliqué and will then stop.



5 Embroidery

# **ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS**

<mark>と Note</mark>

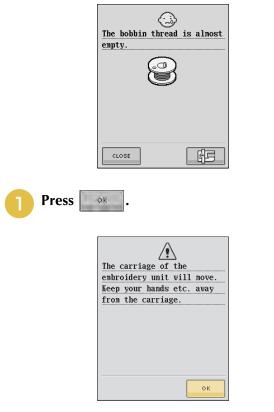
• Be careful not to bump the embroidery unit carriage or the presser foot when removing or attaching the embroidery frame. Otherwise, the pattern will not embroider correctly.

## If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread

When the bobbin begins to run out of thread during embroidering, the machine will stop and the message below will appear. Press **IFE** and

follow the directions below to rethread the lower threading. If very little sewing remains, you can embroider 10 final stitches without rethreading the

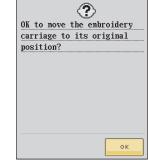
machine by pressing \_\_\_\_\_. The machine will stop after sewing the 10 stitches.



→ After the thread is automatically cut, the carriage will move.

- Unlock the frame-securing lever and remove the embroidery frame.
  - \* Be careful not to apply strong force to the fabric at this time. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.





 $\rightarrow$  The carriage will return to its original position.

Attach the embroidery frame.

To return to the spot in the pattern where you stopped sewing, follow steps through sin the next section.

## If the Thread Breaks During Sewing

- Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the machine.
  - If the upper thread is broken, redo the upper threading. If the bobbin thread is broken, press from the directions in steps 1 through 5 from the previous section to reset the bobbin.
- **Press** <u>J</u>-/+.



4

Press  $\boxed{1}$  -1 ,  $\boxed{1}$  -10 , or  $\boxed{1}$  -100 to move the

needle back the correct number of stitches before the spot where the thread broke.

If you cannot move back to the spot where the thread broke, press 
 to select the color and move to the beginning position of that color, then use 
 +1, 
 +10, or 
 +100 to move ahead to slightly before where the thread broke.



**5** Press **CLOSE** to return to the original

screen.

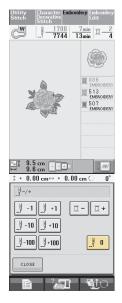
Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot, and press the "Start/ Stop" button to continue sewing.

## Restarting from the Beginning









- → The embroidery frame moves, returning the needle to the pattern's beginning position.
- Bress the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.

## Automatically Resuming Embroidery When the Power Goes Off

The current color, stitch number and design position are saved when the power is interrupted during embroidering. The next time that the machine is turned on, you can resume embroidering.

### Memo

Even if the power goes out in the middle of embroidery, the machine returns to the point where embroidery was stopped when the machine is turned on again.

<mark>ヒ Note</mark>

 Do not remove the embroidery unit or the memory will no longer remember your design.



Turn the main power to ON.

Follow the instructions shown on the screen and remove the embroidery frame.

→ The following message will appear.







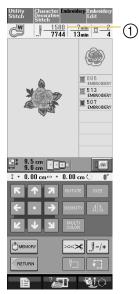
→ The previous sewing screen displayed before the machine was turned off appears.

#### n Memo

If you want to start a new operation, press

**CANCEL** so the pattern selection screen appears.

Press the "Start/Stop" button to continue embroidering.

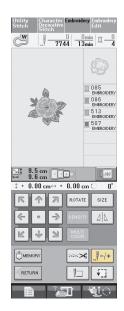


) Stitch number when embroidery is resumed

## **Manually Resuming Embroidery** After Turning Off the Power

**Example:** If the power is turned off while sewing the second color

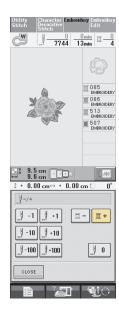






Press  $|\mathbf{I}+|$  to move the second color to the

first position in the display.



| З | Use | _y +1, | +10 , or | +100 | to advance the |
|---|-----|--------|----------|------|----------------|
|---|-----|--------|----------|------|----------------|

pattern to slightly before where sewing stopped.

| $\begin{array}{c c} Utility & Character Embroidery Embroidery Edit \\ \hline Utility & Character Embroidery Edit \\ \hline Utility & Utility & Character & Charac$ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ₩                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| E-MERODERY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| t 9.5 cm t 9.6 cm t 9.6 cm 0°                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <u>,</u> <u>y</u> -1 <u>,</u> <u>y</u> +1 <u>□</u> - <u>□</u> +<br><u>y</u> -10 <u>y</u> +10                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <u>.</u> ¥ -100 <u>.</u> ¥ +100 <u>.</u> ¥ 0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ा <b>र वि</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

CLOSE to return to the original Press

#### screen.

Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and press the "Start/ Stop" button to start sewing.

#### Note

 To continue a pattern that has had its position changed (see page 179), move the pattern the same amount in the layout display screen, then follow the steps above. In this case, you need to make a note of the pattern's position before turning off the power.

#### Memo 4

4701 display to remember the Use the last stitch number sewn before you turn off the power. Then use the 🔰 +1 , 🚽 +10 , or 🚽 +100 keys to move the pattern to the same stitch number and continue sewing.



# MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS

## **Adjusting Thread Tension**

When embroidering, the thread tension should be set so that the upper thread can slightly be seen on the wrong side of the fabric.

### Correct Thread Tension

The pattern can be seen from the wrong side of the fabric. If the thread tension is not set correctly, the pattern will not finish well. The fabric may pucker or the thread may break.





(Right side)

(Wrong side)

Follow the operations described below to adjust thread tension according to the situation.

#### Note

· If the thread tension setting is made extremely weak, the machine may stop during sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction. Increase the thread tension slightly, and begin sewing again.

#### Memo

- · If you turn the main power to OFF or select a different pattern, the thread tension will reset to the automatic setting.
- · When you retrieve a saved pattern, the thread tension setting will be the same as when the pattern was saved.

## Upper Thread is Too Tight

The tension of the upper thread is too tight, resulting in the bobbin thread being visible from the right side of the fabric.





(Right side)

(Wrong side)



Press >>>>



Press \_ to weaken the upper thread

tension. (The tension number will decrease.)

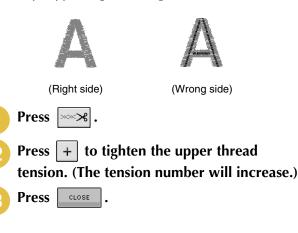
| ∞<≯   |            |       |
|-------|------------|-------|
|       | TENSION 4. | ] _ + |
|       |            | 5 mm  |
| CLOSE | ]          |       |





## ■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

The tension of the upper thread is too loose, resulting in a loose upper thread, loose thread locks, or loops appearing on the right side of the fabric.



## Using the Automatic Thread **Cutting Function** (END COLOR TRIM)

The automatic thread cutting function **\*** will cut the thread at the end of sewing each color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this

function off, press  $\longrightarrow$  key and then  $\checkmark$ . This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

\* This setting returns to its default when the machine is turned off.

| Press | ∞~ <b>米</b> | • |
|-------|-------------|---|

| Utility Character Embra<br>Stitch Stitch<br>W I 3639 - | idery Embroidery<br>Edit<br>Omin II 0<br>6min 5                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                        | ECAP<br>GREEN<br>SEACREST<br>CORN<br>ELOVER<br>ELOVER<br>LUCKC<br>HARVEST<br>GOLD |
| 9.6 cm<br>→ 7.2 cm                                     | ) cm () 0°                                                                        |
| Rot Rot                                                |                                                                                   |
| 🗲 • 🏓 den                                              | ѕітч ⊿∐                                                                           |
| R 🏫 N 🥁                                                |                                                                                   |
|                                                        | ≫!-/+                                                                             |
|                                                        |                                                                                   |
|                                                        |                                                                                   |



Press **T** to turn off END COLOR TRIM.



- $\rightarrow$  The key will display as |
- When one color thread is sewn, the machine will stop without cutting the thread.

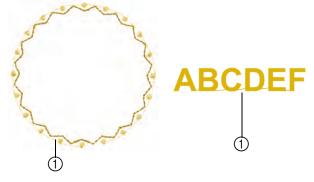
## **Function (JUMP STITCH TRIM)**

אוי automatically trim any excess thread jumps within the color. This function is initially turned on. To

turn this function off, press  $|\infty| \times |$  key and then

 $\mathbf{X}$ . This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

Your customized setting remains after turning off and on the machine.



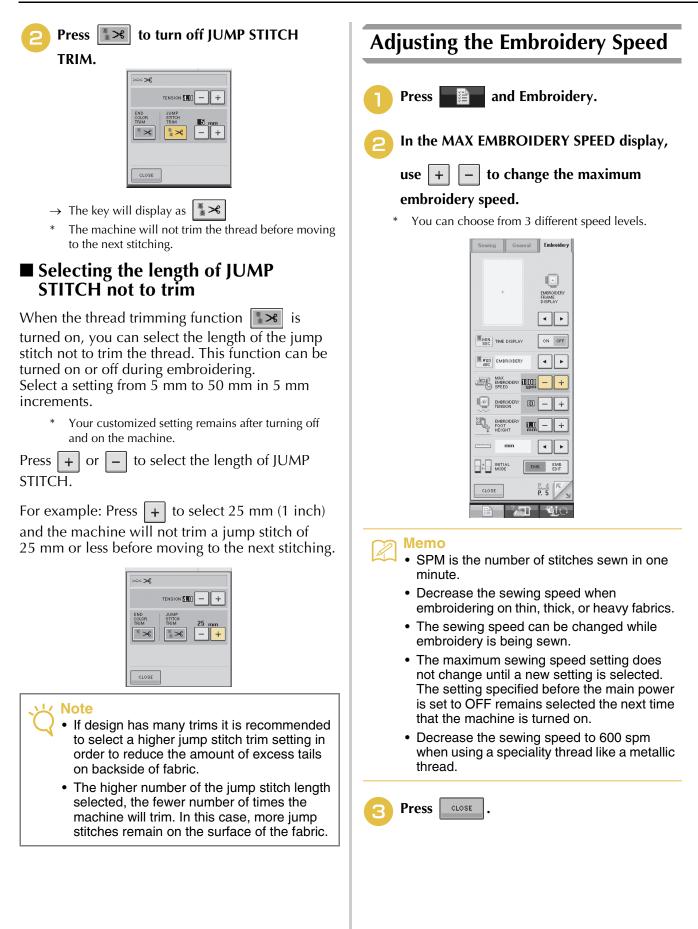
1 Jump stitch

Note · When this function is turned on, use the enclosed ball point needle HA × 130 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters. Using other needles may cause the thread to break.





5 Embroidery



## Changing the Thread Color Display

You can display the name of the thread colors, the time or embroidery thread number.

| Colors on the screen may vary slightly from actual spool colors.                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Press 📔 .                                                                             |
| Press Embroidery.                                                                     |
| 3 In the THREAD COLOR DISPLAY, use                                                    |
| ▶ to display the name of the thread colors, the time or the embroidery thread number. |

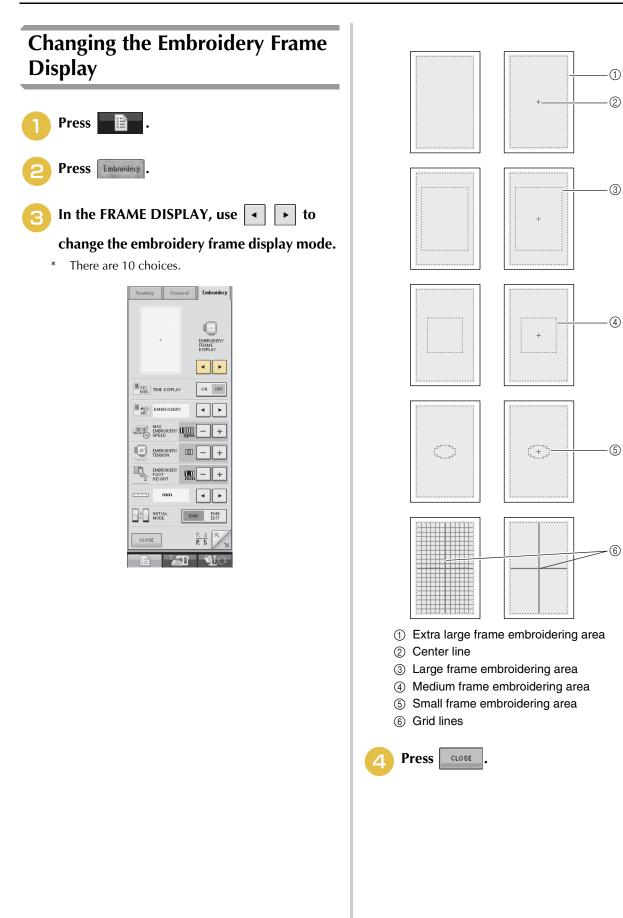
| HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODERY<br>HERODE | Sewing | g Gei           | neral     | Emb          | roidery      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| MARY DOLOGY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |        |                 |           | FRAMI        |              |
| MARY DOLOGY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |        |                 |           | •            | ŀ            |
| MAXENDERY DOD - +<br>SPECO DI - +<br>PRESORTY DD - +<br>PRESORTY DD - +<br>PRESORTY DD - +<br>PRESORTY DD - +<br>MAXENDERY DD - +<br>M                                                                                                                                                                                     |        |                 |           | •            | Þ            |
| Image: Second                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |        |                 |           |              |              |
| MADE EMB. EMF.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |        | EMBROIDERY      |           |              | [+]          |
| MODE     EMB. EMB.     EDIT                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |        | FOOT            | 1.5<br>mm | _            | +            |
| MODE ENT                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | [      | mm              |           | •            | F            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |        | INITIAL<br>MODE | EME       | 3.           | EMB.<br>EDIT |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | CLOS   | E               |           | P. 4<br>P. 5 | ×,           |

When the thread number | #123 | is Δ

displayed, use ► to select from six embroidery thread brands pictured below.

| Sewin                      | g Ge                         | neral     | Embroidery                     |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|
|                            |                              |           | EMBROIDERY<br>FRAME<br>DISPLAY |
|                            |                              |           |                                |
| #123<br><u>ABC</u><br>MIN. | #123                         |           |                                |
| æ                          | MAX<br>EMBROIDERY<br>SPEED   |           | _ +                            |
|                            | EMBROIDERY<br>TENSION        |           | - +                            |
| ăî'                        | EMBROIDERY<br>FOOT<br>HEIGHT | 1.5<br>mm | - +                            |
| [111]111]                  | mm                           |           | • •                            |
| *                          | INITIAL<br>MODE              | EME       | B. EMB.<br>EDIT                |
| CLOS                       | E                            | -         | P. 4<br>P. 5                   |
|                            | -?                           | 50        | ୍ୟାତ                           |

**EMBROIDERY/POLYESTER** 0620 THREAD# EMBROIDERY 0513 EMBROIDERY 0205 EMBROIDERY **COUNTRY/COTTON THREAD#** 0625 COUNTRY 0444 COUNTRY 0035 COUNTRY MADEIRA/POLYESTER 1710 THREAD# МА РОLУ 1848 MA POLY 1980 MA POLY **MADEIRA RAYON THREAD#** 1049 MA RAYON ■ 1369 MA RAYON □ 1002 ma rayon SULKY/POLYESTER THREAD# 1191 SU RAYON 1177 SU RAYON 1187 SU RAYON **ROBISON-ANTON/POLYESTER** 5592 RA RAYON THREAD# RA RAYON RA RAYON Press CLOSE



178

# **REVISING THE PATTERN**

# **A** CAUTION

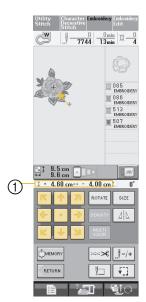
When you have revised the pattern, check the display of available embroidery frames and use an appropriate frame. If you use an embroidery frame not displayed as available for use, the presser foot may strike the frame and possibly cause injury.

## **Changing the Pattern Position**

Use € • > to move the pattern in the direction shown by the arrow.



#### to center the pattern.

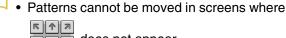


(1) Distance from the center

The pattern can also be moved by dragging it.

If a USB mouse is connected, move the mouse to position the pointer on the desired pattern, and then select and drag the pattern. The pattern can also be dragged by selecting it directly in the screen with your finger or the touch pen.

Memo





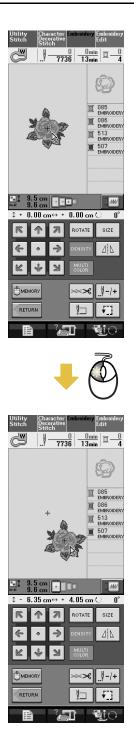
does not appear.

• If 100% in the Embroidery Edit screen is pressed to display an enlargement of the pattern, the pattern cannot be moved by

in the screen to

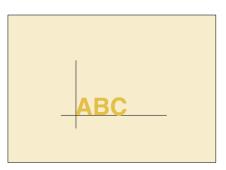
dragging it. Press < • > К 1 Л

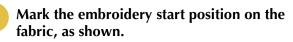
move the pattern.

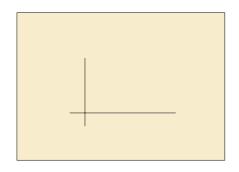


# Aligning the Pattern and the Needle

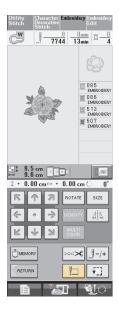
**Example:** Aligning the lower left side of a pattern and the needle

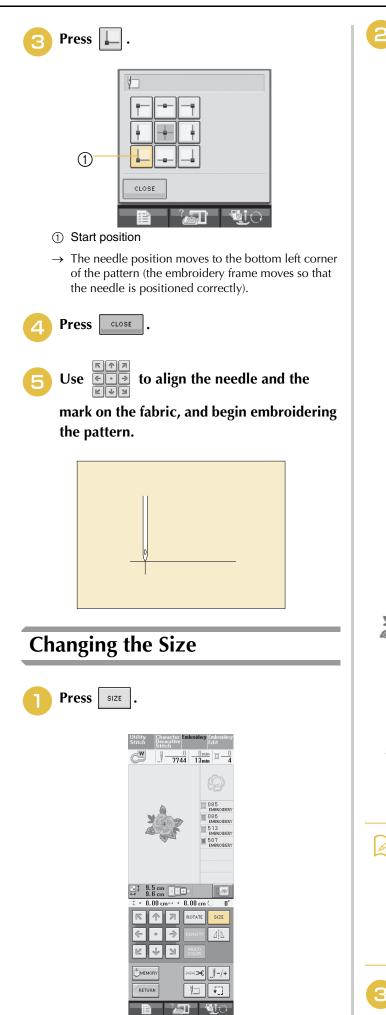






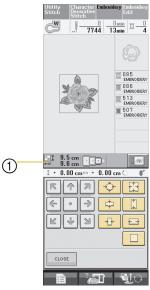




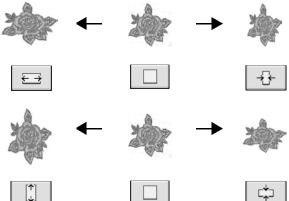


# Select the direction in which to change the size.

- Press  $\fbox$  to enlarge the pattern proportionately.
  - Press  $\checkmark$  to shrink the pattern proportionately.
  - Press  $\overleftarrow{}$  to stretch the pattern horizontally.
  - Press to compact the pattern horizontally.
  - Press [] to stretch the pattern vertically.
  - Press  $\square$  to compact the pattern vertically.
- Press to return the pattern to its original appearance.



① Size of the pattern



## Memo • Some nat

- Some patterns or characters can not be enlarged more than others.
- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged to a greater degree if they are rotated 90 degrees.
- Some copyright or licensed patterns and characters can not be enlarged or reduced.

Press close to return to the original screen.

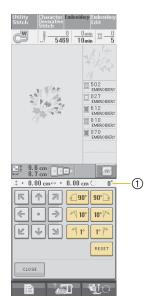
# Rotating the Pattern





#### Select the angle of rotation for the pattern.

- Press  $\boxed{\cancel{90}}$  to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the left.
- \* Press 90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the right.
- \* Press **10** to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left.
- \* Press **10°** to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.
- \* Press **1** to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the left.
- \* Press right.
- \* Press **RESET** to return the pattern to its original position.

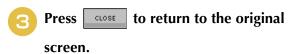


① Degree of rotation

0°

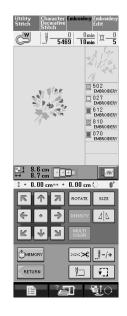






## Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

Press  $\square \square$  so it appears as  $\square \square$  to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern. Press  $\square \square$  again to return the pattern to normal.





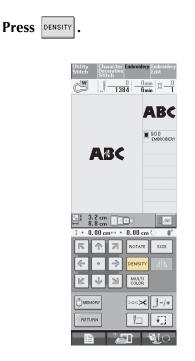
214

| Δ | 7 |  |
|---|---|--|

## Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only)

The thread density for some alphabet character and frame patterns can be changed.

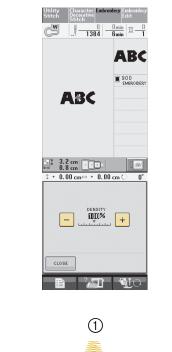
A setting between 80% and 120% in 5% increments can be specified.





#### Change the density.

- \* Press to make the pattern less dense.
- \* Press + to make the pattern more dense.





+

(1) Normal

Press

3

- ② Fine thread (stitches closer together)
- ③ Coarse thread (stitches farther apart)
- → The pattern density changes each time you press a button.

B

**CLOSE** to return to the pattern

selection screen.

## Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns

Combined alphabet character patterns can be sewn with each letter in a different color. If "MULTI COLOR" is set, the machine stops after each character is sewn so that the thread can be changed to a different color.



Press MULTI COLOR so that it appears as MULTI COLOR.

\* Press the key again to return to the original setting.



2

After a character is sewn, change the thread color, and then sew the next character.



# **USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION**

## **Embroidery Data Precautions**

Observe the following precautions when using embroidery data other than that created and saved in this machine.

## **A** CAUTION

• When using embroidery data other than our original patterns, the thread or needle may break when sewing with a stitch density that is too fine or when sewing three or more overlapping stitches. In that case, use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery data.

### **Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used**

• Only .pes,.pha,.phb,.phc, and .dst embroidery data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that saved using our data design systems or sewing machines may cause the embroidery machine to malfunction.

## ■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB media. Use media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Floppy disk drive
- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory).

Stitch data can be recalled only.

• USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/Writer.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- XD-Picture Card

#### く Note

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).

#### 🔊 Memo

• When a file folder is necessary to create, use a computer.

 Letters and numerals can be used in the file names. In addition, if the file name contains no more than eight characters, the entire file name will appear on the screen. If the file name is more than eight characters long, only the first six characters followed by "~" and a number appear as the file name.

# Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used

- Compatible models: IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems:

Microsoft Windows 98SE/Me/2000/XP

(Windows 98SE requires a driver. Download the driver from our Web site (www.babylock.com). In addition, only Windows 98 Second Edition can use the driver.)

## ■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the embroidery data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9,"-", and "\_".
- If embroidery data larger than 300 mm (H) × 180 mm (W) (approx.12 inches (H) × 7 inches (W)) is selected, a message is shown asking if you wish to rotate the pattern 90 degrees.
  Even after being rotated 90 degrees, embroidery data larger than 300 mm (H) × 180 mm (W) (approx. 12 inches (H) × 7 inches (W)) cannot be used. (All designs must be within the 300 mm (H) × 180 mm (W) (approx. 12 inches (H) × 7 inches (W)) design field size.)
- .pes files saved with the number of stitches or the number of colors exceeding the specified limits cannot be displayed. Use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery pattern so that it meets the specifications.
- Embroidery data stored in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If embroidery data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that embroidery data cannot be retrieved by the machine.
- Even if the embroidery unit is not attached, the machine will manage embroidery data.

### ■ Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data

- .dst data is displayed in the pattern list screen by file name (the actual image cannot be displayed). Only the first eight characters of the file name can be displayed.
- Since Tajima (.dst) data does not contain specific thread color information, it is displayed with our default thread color sequence. Check the preview and change the thread colors as desired.

#### Trademarks

- Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD Card Association.
- CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.
- Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Smart Media is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.
- Multi Media Card (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.
- xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.
- IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as  $^{\textcircled{R}}$  and  $^{\textcircled{M}}$  are not clearly described within the text.



• When disconnecting the USB cable:

Before disconnecting the USB cable, click the "Unplug or Eject Hardware" icon in the taskbar of Windows<sup>®</sup> Me/2000 or the "Safely Remove Hardware" icon in the taskbar of Windows<sup>®</sup> XP. Then, when the removable disk can safely be removed, disconnect the USB cable from the computer and the machine.



With Windows 98 SE, check that the Access lamp is not flashing before disconnecting the USB cable from the computer and the machine.

## Saving Embroidery Patterns in the **Machine's Memory**

You can save embroidery patterns that you have customized and will use often; for example, your name, patterns that have been rotated or had the size changed, patterns that have had the sewing position changed, etc. You can save up to 20 patterns.

#### Note

Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern to the machine's memory.
- See page 191 for information on retrieving a saved pattern.

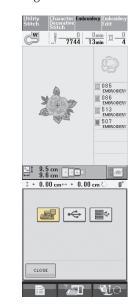


Press memory when the pattern you want to

save is in the sewing screen.



- Press
  - Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving



 $\rightarrow$  The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

## If the Memory is Full

If the screen below displays, either the maximum number of patterns have been saved or the pattern you want to save takes a lot of memory, and the machine cannot save it. If you delete a previously saved pattern, you can save the current pattern.



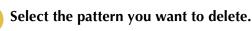
CANCEL Press

to return to the original screen without saving



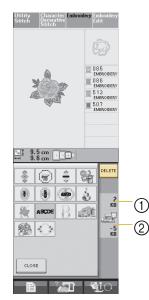
 $\rightarrow$  The machine displays the patterns currently saved.











- Amount of memory used by the pattern to be deleted
- ② Amount of memory needed to save the current pattern



\* If you decide not to delete the pattern, press

| Utility Character Emb<br>Stitch Decorative<br>Stitch Utility Character Emb | roidery Embroidery<br>Edit<br>13min <u> </u>                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| N + N                                                                      | 085     EMBROIDERY     066     EMBROIDERY     066     EMBROIDERY     07     EMBROIDERY |
| OK to delete the<br>pattern?                                               | selected                                                                               |
|                                                                            | ок                                                                                     |

→ The "Saving" screen displays. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### と Note

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

#### א Memo

- If there is enough memory available after deleting the pattern, the pattern you want to save will be saved automatically. If there is not enough memory available after deleting the pattern, repeat the steps above to delete another pattern from the machine's memory.
- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern.
- See page 191 for more information about retrieving saved patterns.

## Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)

When sending embroidery patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's USB port. Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB Card Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.

#### 河 Memo

Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our web site for more details.

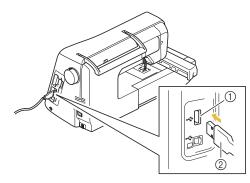


Press memory when the pattern you want to

save is in the sewing screen.



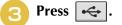
2 Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine.



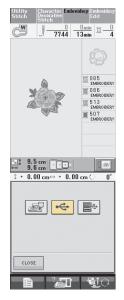
- ① USB port connector for media
- ② USB media

#### 河 Memo

- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.
  - Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port connector. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.



\* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

# Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer

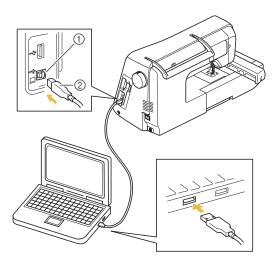
Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the embroidery patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in your computer.

#### بر Note

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

# Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine.

\* The USB cable can be plugged into the USB port connectors on the computer and embroidery machine whether or not they are turned on.



- ① USB port connector for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- → The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "My Computer" on the computer.

#### <mark>と Note</mark>

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a connector in one direction.
   If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

**2** Press

**Press** 

#### Press memory when the pattern you want to

save is in the sewing screen.



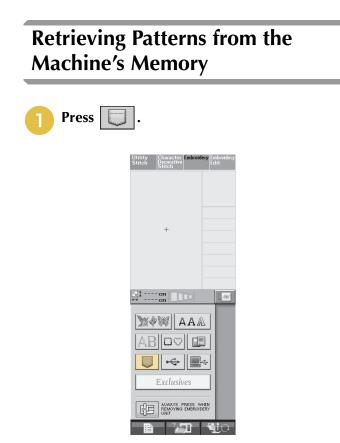
\* Press **CLOSE** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "My Computer".

Select the pattern's .phc file in "Removable Disk" and copy the file to the computer.

| - Removable Disk (i:)                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Die Edt Hew Favorite                                                                   | Tools Beb                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| File and Folder Tasky                                                                  | and the second s |  |
| Dthey Places<br>J. Ny Company<br>M. Possiants<br>Showed Distances<br>M. Bassian Stream | (a)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |
| Details                                                                                | 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |



 $\rightarrow$  The machine displays the patterns currently in the memory.

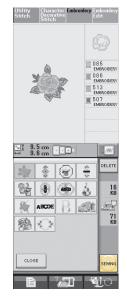
Press the key of the pattern you want to retrieve.

Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.



| Press | SEWING | • |
|-------|--------|---|
|-------|--------|---|

З



 $\rightarrow$  The sewing screen is displayed.

## **Recalling from USB Media**

You can recall a specific embroidery pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the embroidery pattern.

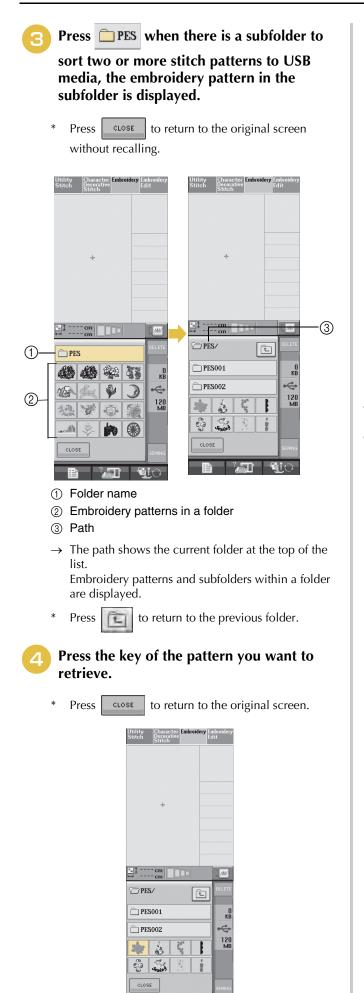


Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine (see page 189).

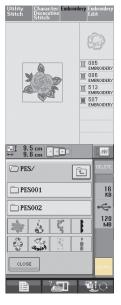




 $\rightarrow$  Embroidery patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.



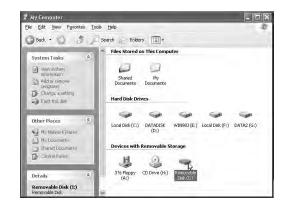


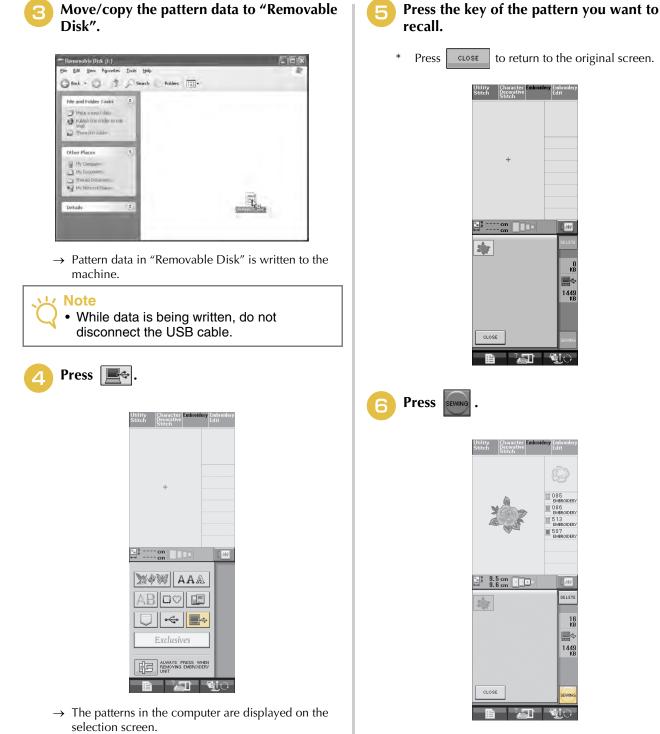


 $\rightarrow$  The sewing screen is displayed.

## **Recalling from the Computer**

- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine (see page 190).
- On the computer, open "My Computer" then go to "Removable Disk".





 $\rightarrow\,$  The sewing screen is displayed.

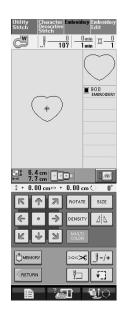
5 Embroidery

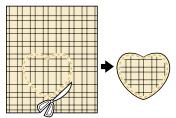
# **EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS**

## Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)

You can use framed patterns of the same size and shape to create an appliqué. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

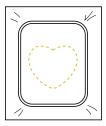
Select a straight stitch frame pattern. Embroider the pattern onto the appliqué material, then cut neatly around the outside of the shape.



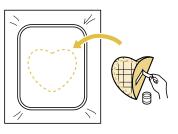




Embroider the same pattern from step **1** onto the base fabric.



Apply a thin layer of fabric glue or a temporary spray adhesive to the rear of the appliqué created in step 1. Attach the appliqué to the base fabric matching the shapes.

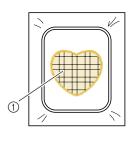


Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué. Embroider over the appliqué and base fabric from step 3 to create the appliqué.



#### よ Note

• If you change the size or position of the patterns when selecting them, make a note of the size and location.



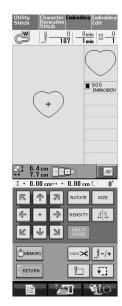
① Appliqué material

## Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2)

This is a second method to make appliqué using embroidery patterns. You do not have to change the fabric in the embroidery frame using this method. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

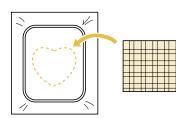


Select a straight stitch frame pattern, and embroider the pattern onto the base fabric.



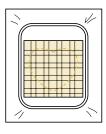
Place the appliqué fabric over the pattern embroidered in step **1**.

\* Be sure that the appliqué fabric completely covers the seam.

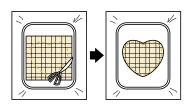




Embroider the same pattern on the appliqué fabric.



Remove the embroidery frame from the embroidery unit, and cut around the outside of the stitches.



#### بر Note

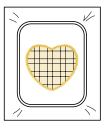
- Do not remove the fabric from the embroidery frame to cut it. Also, do not pull strongly on the fabric. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.
- Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué.



#### K Note

Do not change the size or position of the pattern.

6 Reattach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit, and embroider the satin stitch pattern to create an appliqué.





# Chapter 6 Embroidery Edit

| EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS198                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT199                                          |
| Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Frame Patterns/ |
| Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs200                              |
| Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns200                               |
| EDITING PATTERNS                                                       |
| ■ Key Functions                                                        |
| Moving the Pattern205                                                  |
| Rotating the Pattern205                                                |
| Changing the Size of the Pattern206                                    |
| Deleting the Pattern207                                                |
| Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns              |
| Changing Alphabet Character Spacing                                    |
| Reducing Character Spacing208                                          |
| Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern             |
| Changing the Thread Color                                              |
| Creating a Custom Thread Table                                         |
| ■ Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List              |
| Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table                          |
| Designing Repeated Patterns213                                         |
| Sewing Repeated Patterns213                                            |
| ■ Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern215                       |
| Assigning Thread Marks216                                              |
| After Editing217                                                       |
| ■ Color Sorting Repeated Patterns218                                   |
| COMBINING PATTERNS219                                                  |
| Editing Combined Patterns219                                           |
| ■ Selecting combined embroidery patterns222                            |
| Sewing Combined Patterns222                                            |
| USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION                                              |

# **EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS**

With the Embroidery Edit functions, you can combine embroidery patterns and character patterns, change the size of patterns, rotate patterns, and perform many other editing functions. This machine can perform the 9 functions listed below.

#### **Combine Patterns**

You can easily create combinations of embroidery patterns, frame patterns, character patterns, patterns from the machine's memory, patterns from separately sold embroidery cards, and many other patterns.

#### ■ Move Patterns

Within the 30 cm  $\times$  18 cm (approx. 12 inches  $\times$  7 inches) wide embroidery area, you can change the position of patterns, and check the position on the LCD.

#### Rotate Patterns

You can rotate patterns one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.

#### **Enlarge or Reduce Patterns**

You can make patterns larger or smaller.

• This function is not available for some patterns.

#### **Create Mirror Images**

You can create horizontal mirror images.

- This function is not available for some patterns.
- Change Alphabet Character Spacing

You can increase or decrease the spacing between characters in combined patterns.

#### ■ Change Alphabet Character Layout/Array

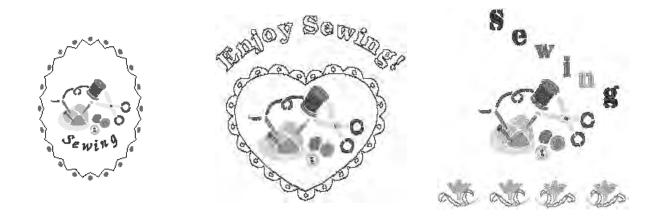
You can change the layout of the characters to a curved line, diagonal, etc. There are 6 choices total.

■ Change the Thread Colors of Patterns

You can change the thread colors of the pattern to your favorite colors.

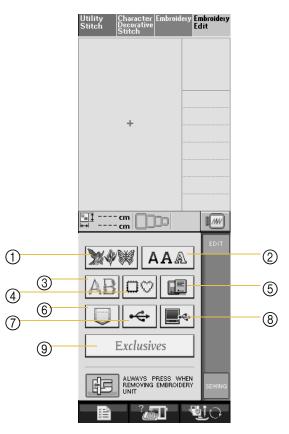
#### **Creating a Repeating Pattern**

You can add copies of a pattern to create a pattern that repeats in a vertical or horizontal direction.



## **SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT**

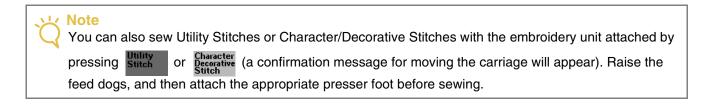
Prepare the machine for embroidery according to the instructions on page 144, and press display the screen below.



- ① Embroidery patterns
- ② Alphabet character patterns
- ③ Floral alphabet patterns
- ④ Frame patterns
- (5) Patterns from an embroidery card (sold separately)
- ⑥ Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 191)
- ⑦ Patterns saved in USB media (see page 191)
- (8) Patterns saved on the computer (see page 192)
- ③ Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs

#### Memo

See page 150 for more information on each category's selection screen.



## Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Floral Alphabet Patterns/Frame Patterns/Baby Lock Exclusive Embroidery Designs

Select the category of the pattern.

Press the key of the pattern you want to edit.

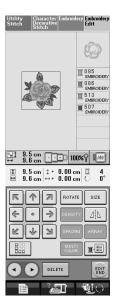
- \* See pages 151 and 153 for more information on selecting patterns.
- $\rightarrow$  The pattern is displayed in the top part of the screen.





→ The pattern selected for editing is outlined in red on the embroidery edit display.

Proceed to see "EDITING PATTERNS" on page 203 to edit the pattern.

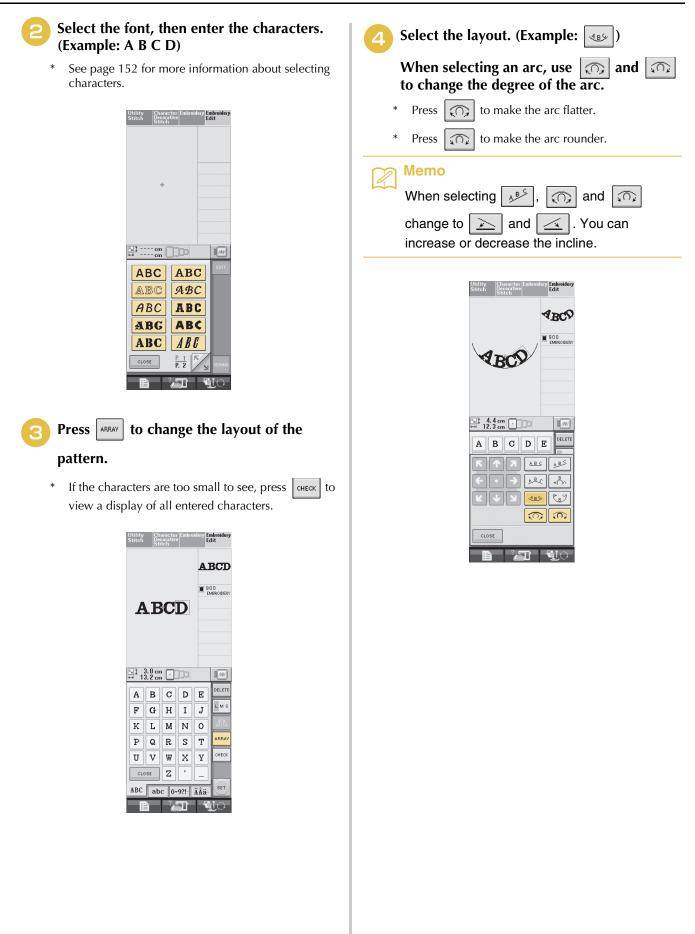


## Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns

When you select character patterns from the embroidery edit screen, you can edit the appearance of the pattern at the same time.



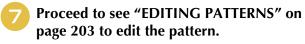


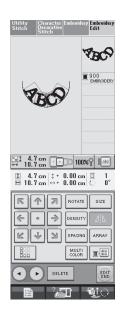


6 Embroidery Edit

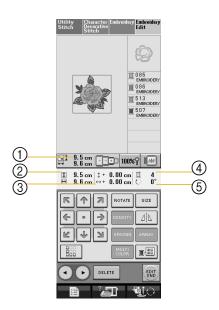


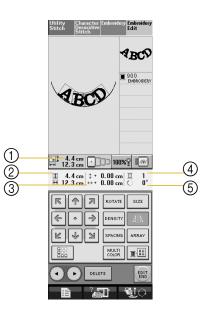
 $\rightarrow$  The embroidery edit screen will appear.





# **EDITING PATTERNS**





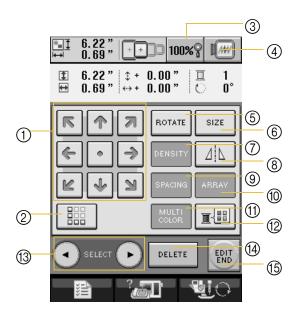
- ① Shows the size of the entire combined pattern.
- ② Shows the size of the pattern currently selected.
- ③ Shows the distance from the center of the frame.
- ④ Shows the number of colors in the pattern currently selected.
- (5) Shows the degree of rotation for the pattern.

#### Memo

If a key display is light gray, you cannot use that function with the selected pattern.



## ■ Key Functions

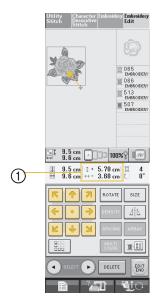


| No. | Display                                    | Key Name                       | Explanation                                                                                                                                        | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1   | <b>下个</b> 刀<br>そ・ →                        | Arrow keys<br>(  Center key)   | Press these keys to move the pattern in the direction indicated by the arrow on the key. (Press • to return the pattern to its original position.) | 205  |
|     | K 4<br>Z · J                               |                                |                                                                                                                                                    |      |
| 2   |                                            | Border key                     | Press this key to make a repeating pattern.                                                                                                        | 213  |
| 3   | 100% <sup>©</sup> 1<br>200% <sup>©</sup> 1 | Zoom key                       | Press this key for precise design placement.<br>You can zoom a pattern, 100% or 200%.                                                              | 221  |
| 4   |                                            | Image key                      | Press the key for a preview of the sewn image.                                                                                                     | 164  |
| 5   | ROTATE                                     | Rotate key                     | Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.                                | 205  |
| 6   | SIZE                                       | Size key                       | Press this key to change the size of the pattern. Patterns can be enlarged or reduced.                                                             | 206  |
| 7   | DENSITY                                    | Density key                    | Press this key to change the density of frame patterns or character patterns.                                                                      | 183  |
| 8   | $\square [ \square$                        | Horizontal mirror<br>image key | Press this key to make a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern.                                                                          | 183  |
| 9   | SPACING                                    | Character spacing key          | Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.                                                                                        | 207  |
| 10  | ARRAY                                      | Array key                      | Press this key to change the configuration of a character pattern.                                                                                 | 207  |
| 1   | MULTI<br>COLOR                             | Multi color key                | Press this key to change the color of individual characters in a pattern.                                                                          | 209  |
| 12  |                                            | Thread palette key             | Press this key to change the colors of the displayed pattern.                                                                                      | 209  |
| 13  | SELECT D                                   | Pattern select key             | When a combined pattern is selected, use these keys to select a part of the pattern to edit.                                                       | _    |
| (4) | DELETE                                     | Delete key                     | Press this key to delete the selected pattern (the pattern outlined by the red box).                                                               | 207  |
| 15  | EDIT                                       | Edit end key                   | Press this key to continue to the next step.                                                                                                       | 217  |

## Moving the Pattern

Press to move the pattern in the direction shown on the key.

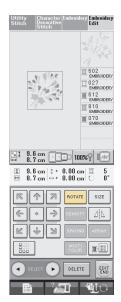
Press • to return the pattern to the center.



① Distance from the center

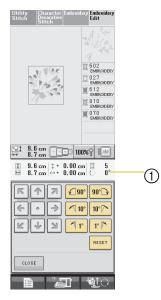
## **Rotating the Pattern**



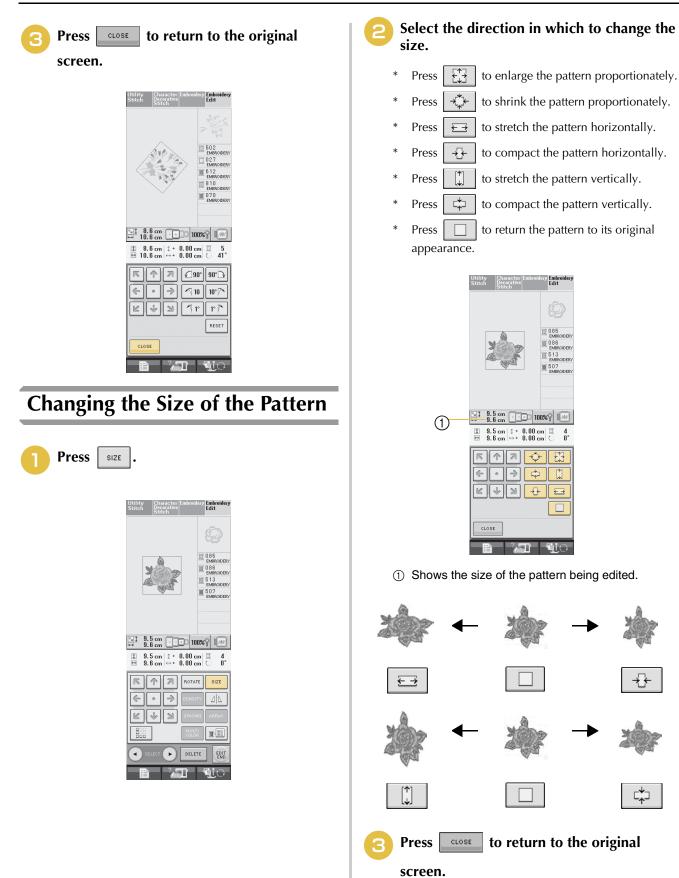


# Select the angle by which the pattern is rotated.

- \* Press **J**90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the left.
- \* Press 90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the right.
- \* Press 10° to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left.
- \* Press 10° (\*) to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.
- \* Press 1 to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the left.
- Press 1° <sup>™</sup> to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the right.
- \* Press reset to return the pattern to its original position.



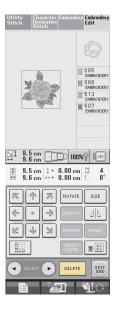
① Degree of the pattern's rotation



206

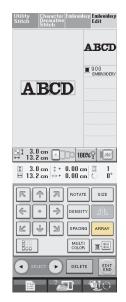
## **Deleting the Pattern**

#### Press **DELETE** to delete the pattern from the screen.



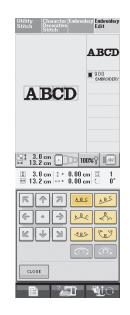
## Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns

Press ARRAY



# Press the key of the layout you want to embroider.

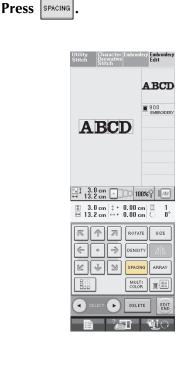
\* See page 201 for more information about layout types.

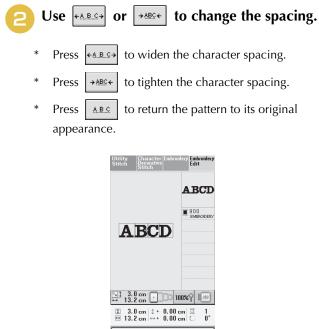


 $\rightarrow$  The display will show the selected layout.



# Changing Alphabet Character Spacing







# A B C D $\leftrightarrow$ ABCD

→ABC←



| Press | CLOSE | to return to the original |
|-------|-------|---------------------------|
|-------|-------|---------------------------|

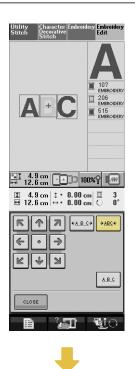
screen.

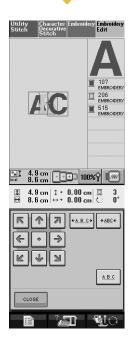
## **Reducing Character Spacing**

The spacing between characters can be reduced to 50% of the narrowest character in the group.



- It is not recommended to edit data and transfer to other or older version machines. Same features do not apply in other machines, so problems may occur.
- Character spacing can be reduced only when characters are arranged normally on a straight line.





## Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern

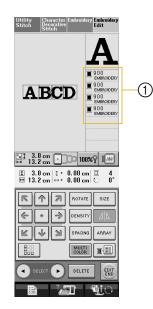
Press MULTI so you can assign a thread color to each character.





# Change the thread to sew each character in a different color.

\* Press to change the colors in the sewing order (see page 209).



() Color for each character

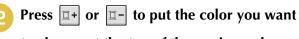
## **Changing the Thread Color**

You can change the thread color by moving the color to be changed to the top of the sewing order and selecting a new color from the thread colors in the machine.

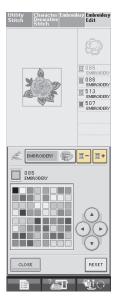


| Utility<br>Stitch | Character<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | Embroidery                                         | Embroidery<br>Edit                     |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
|                   |                                   |                                                    | Q                                      |
|                   | -                                 |                                                    | 085<br>EMBROIDERN<br>086               |
| 4 (14)            | and the second                    |                                                    | EMBROIDERY<br>513<br>EMBROIDERY<br>507 |
|                   |                                   |                                                    | EMBROIDERY                             |
|                   |                                   |                                                    |                                        |
| °. ‡ 9.           | 5 cm                              | ⊡ 100%                                             | 9                                      |
| ₩ 9.              | 6 cm 🔔                            |                                                    | a na                                   |
| I 9.              | .6 cm<br>.5 cm ‡ +<br>.6 cm ↔ +   | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm                                 | Ξ 4                                    |
| I 9.              | 5 cm 💲 +                          | 0.00 cm                                            | <u> </u>                               |
| I 9.              | 5 cm 💲 +                          | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm                                 | ≣ 4°                                   |
| I 9.              | 5 cm 💲 +                          | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm<br>ROTATE                       | I 4<br>0°                              |
| I 9.              | 5 cm 💲 +                          | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm<br>ROTATE<br>DENSITY            |                                        |
| 9.<br>9.<br>9.    | 5 cm 💲 +                          | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm<br>ROTATE<br>DENSITY<br>SPACING |                                        |

 $\rightarrow~$  The thread color palette screen displays.



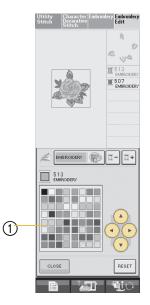
### to change at the top of the sewing order.





#### color from the color palette.

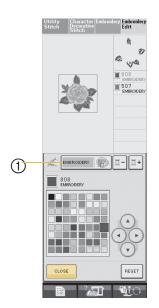
- \* To return to the original color, press **RESET**. If multiple colors have been changed, this command will return all colors to their original colors.
- \* You can select colors from the color palette by directly touching the color selection with the touch pen.



#### ① Color palette

→ The selected color appears at the top of the sewing order.





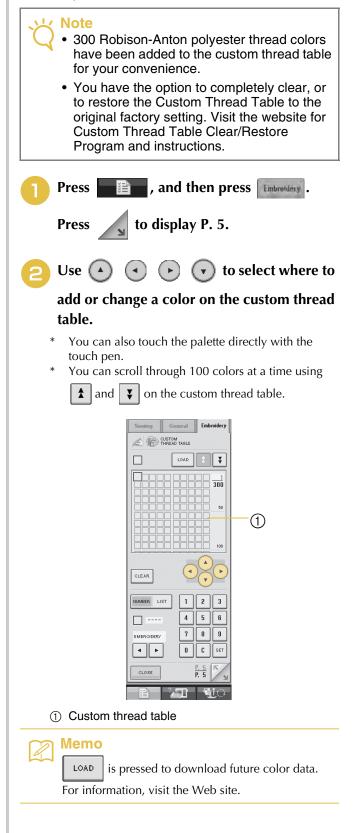
- ① Color palette/Custom thread table change key
- $\rightarrow$  The display shows the changed colors.

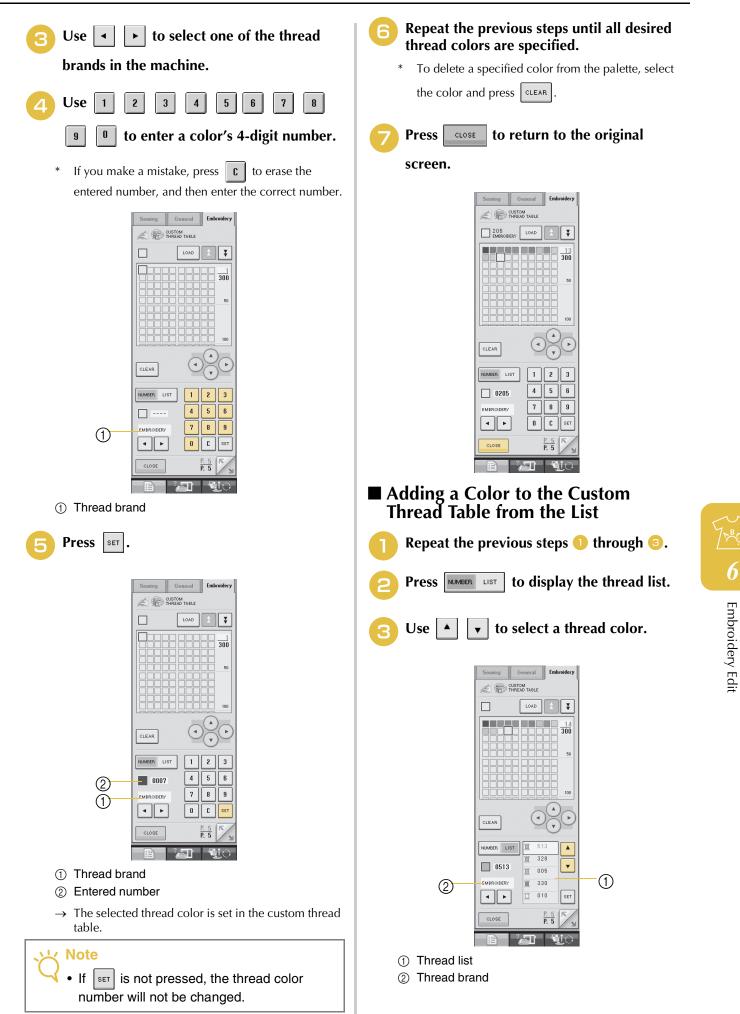
#### 🏹 Memo

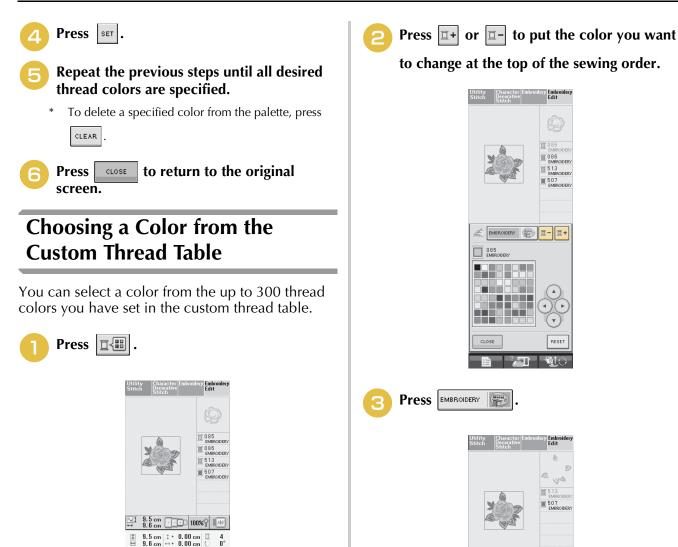
To select a color from the Custom Thread Table, see "Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table" on page 212.

## **Creating a Custom Thread Table**

You can create a custom thread table containing the thread colors that you most often use. You can select thread colors from the machine's extensive list of thread colors from nine different thread brands. You can select any color and move the color to your custom thread table.







ROTATE SIZE • -> --

DELETE

-?,**...**]

 $\rightarrow$  The thread color palette screen displays.

14

िणि

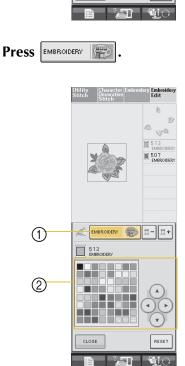
EDIT

6

4 2

12 E

4



Embroider Edit

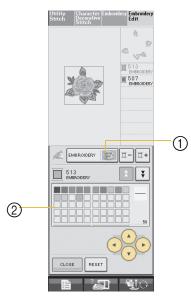
085 EMBROIDERY

- ① Color palette/Custom thread change key ② Color palette
- $\rightarrow$  The custom thread table will appear.



#### color from the custom thread table.

- \* Use **1** and **y** to scroll through the custom thread table.
- \* Press RESET to return to the original color.
- \* You can select colors from the custom thread table by directly touching the screen with the touch pen.



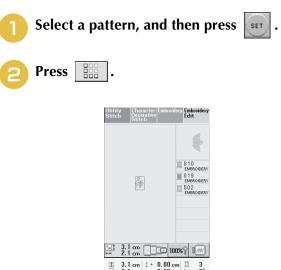
- ① Custom thread
- Custom thread table
- $\rightarrow$  The display shows the changed colors.



# **Designing Repeated Patterns**

## Sewing Repeated Patterns

Using the border function, you can create stitches using repeated patterns. You can also adjust the spacing of the patterns within a repeated pattern stitch.

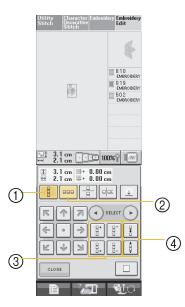








# Select the direction in which the pattern will be repeated.

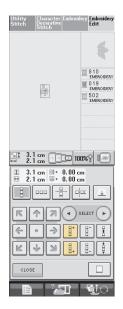


- ① Vertical direction
- ② Horizontal direction
- ③ Repeating and deleting keys
- ④ Spacing keys
- → The pattern direction indicator will change depending on the direction selected.

4 Use ∃ to repeat the pattern on top and

 $\mathbf{B}_{\mathbf{I}}$  to repeat the pattern at the bottom.

- \* To delete the top pattern, press 📳
- \* To delete the bottom pattern, press 🚦



#### **S** Adjust the spacing of the repeated pattern.

- \* To widen spacing, press
- \* To tighten spacing, press

| Jtility Character En<br>Stitch Decorative<br>Stitch | nbroidery Embroidery<br>Edit                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Post                                             | 810     EMBROIDERY     019     EMBROIDERY     502     EMBROIDERY                                     |
| ∎I 9.3 cm<br>₩ 2.1 cm +                             | 8 10     EMBROIDERY     0 19     EMBROIDERY     5 02     EMBROIDERY     8 10     EMBROIDERY     100% |
| I 9.3 cm 時+ 0.     E 2.1 cm ₩+ 0.                   | 00 cm<br>00 cm                                                                                       |
|                                                     |                                                                                                      |
| e la                                                | ା ଅତ୍ୟାତ                                                                                             |

#### Memo

You can only adjust the spacing of patterns enclosed in the red frame.

- Complete repeated patterns by repeating steps 3 through 5.
- 7 Press

**CLOSE** to finish repeating.

#### A Memo

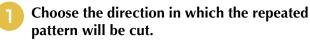
• When there are two or more patterns, all patterns will be grouped together as one pattern in the red frame.

 When changing the direction in which the pattern will be repeated, all of the patterns in the red frame will automatically be grouped

as one repeating unit. Press to change a repeated pattern back to one single pattern. See the following section on how to repeat one element of a repeated pattern.

#### Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern

By using the Cut function, you can select one element of a repeated pattern and repeat only that single element. This function allows you to design complex repeated patterns.



 Press
 ito cut horizontally.

 Press
 ito cut vertically.

 Image: state st

R A R SELECT

The pattern direction indicator will change

->

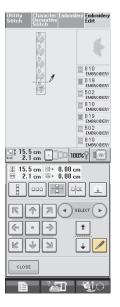
K 1 1 N

CLOSE

 $\rightarrow$ 

n which the rep ontally. ally. Envoices





→ The repeated pattern will be divided into separate elements.



#### repeat.



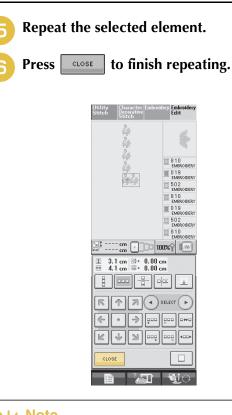
6 Embroidery Edit

| 2 | Use | 1 | and | ŧ | to select the cut line. |
|---|-----|---|-----|---|-------------------------|
|   |     |   |     |   |                         |

depending on the direction selected.

| Utility<br>Stitch | Character<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | Embroidery         | Embroidery<br>Edit                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
|                   | ere 1                             |                    | \$                                                       |
|                   | rorate                            | I                  | 810<br>EMBROIDERY<br>019<br>EMBROIDERY<br>502            |
|                   |                                   | I                  | EMBROIDERY<br>8 1 0<br>EMBROIDERY<br>0 1 9<br>EMBROIDERY |
| °≣1 15.           | 5 cm 🔲                            |                    | 502<br>EMBROIDERY<br>810<br>EMBROIDERY                   |
| 15.               | 1 cm 📋<br>5 cm 時+<br>1 cm 槑+      | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm | · 1 · · · ·                                              |
|                   |                                   |                    |                                                          |
| R<br>R            | * ×<br>• *                        | ( ) SEU<br>        |                                                          |
| CLOS              | E                                 |                    |                                                          |
|                   |                                   |                    |                                                          |

 $\rightarrow$  The cut line will move.



#### Note

- Once you have cut a repeated pattern into separate elements, you cannot return to the original repeated pattern.
- · Each element can be edited separately in the edit screen. See "Selecting combined embroidery patterns" on page 222.

## Assigning Thread Marks

By sewing thread marks, you can easily align patterns when sewing a series. When sewing is finished on a pattern, a thread mark in the shape of an arrow will be sewn using the final thread. When sewing a series of patterns, use the point of this arrow for positioning the following designs to be sewn.

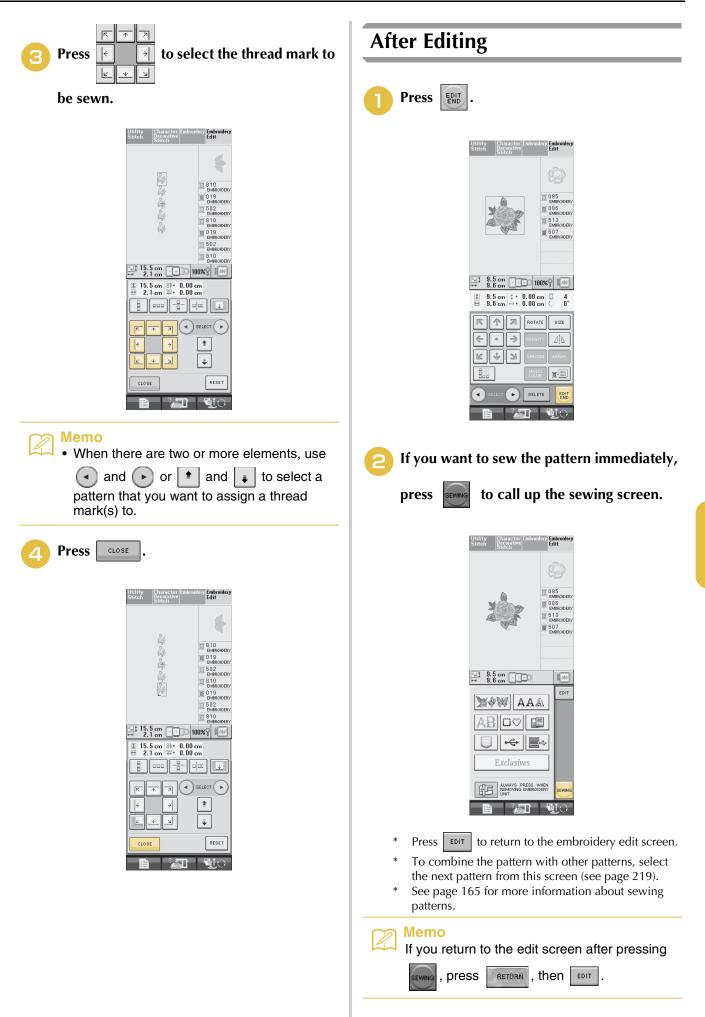
#### Memo

· When repeatedly sewing individual patterns, thread marks can be sewn around the perimeter of the pattern only.





| Stitch   | Character<br>Decorative<br>Stitch | Embroidery           | Embroidery<br>Edit  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
|          | 2.                                |                      | \$                  |
|          | 20                                | I                    | 810<br>EMBROIDERY   |
|          | 0.24                              | I                    | 019<br>EMBROIDERY   |
|          | 20                                | 亘                    | 502<br>EMBROIDERY   |
|          | 3                                 | I                    | 8 1 0<br>EMBROIDERY |
|          | 3                                 | I                    | 0 1 9<br>EMBROIDERY |
|          |                                   |                      | 502<br>EMBROIDERY   |
|          |                                   | I                    | 8 10<br>EMBROIDERY  |
| "IT 15.5 | ) cm 🗔 🗔                          | 00%                  |                     |
| ₩ 2.1    | l cm 止                            | 00%                  | Y WW                |
| 15.8     | ōcm 睐+                            | 0.00 cm              |                     |
| 15.8     | 〕cm                               | 0. 00 cm<br>0. 00 cm |                     |
| 15.8     | ōcm 睐+                            | 0.00 cm              | ) <u>·</u>          |
| 15.8     | 〕cm                               | 0. 00 cm<br>0. 00 cm |                     |
| 15.8     | 〕cm                               | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm   |                     |
| 15.8     | 〕cm                               | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm   |                     |
| 15.8     | 〕cm                               | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm   |                     |
| 15.8     |                                   | 0.00 cm<br>0.00 cm   |                     |



6 Embroidery Edit

Press

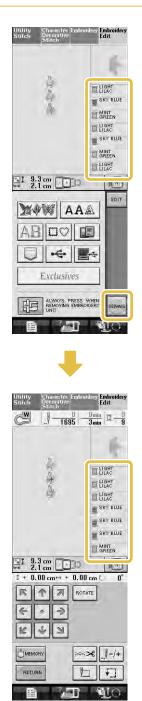
## **Color Sorting Repeated Patterns**

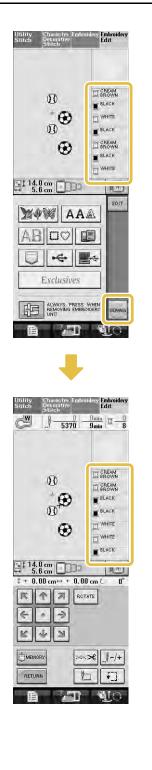
to automatically change the sewing

order of colors in combined border embroidery patterns so that the same color can be continuously sewn. This allows you to continue sewing without repeatedly changing the upper thread or changing the sewing order manually.

#### Memo

- In combined stitch patterns that contain two or more border patterns or other patterns combined with border patterns, the sewing order of only the border patterns is changed.
- When a group of two or more patterns using border patterns is repeated, the sewing order is changed so that the same color can be sewn continuously in each pattern.

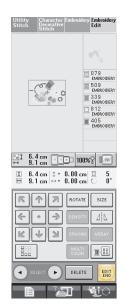




#### **COMBINING PATTERNS** to view P.4, then select **Editing Combined Patterns** 🔁 Use 🔍 **Example:** Combining alphabet characters Utility Character Em Stitch Decorative Stitch Stitch Embroi Edit with an embroidery pattern and editing 1. 2 🏘 6 Press **Markov** to select an embroidery and most pattern. ð # # \$\$\* 32 壘 魏 ility Character Embroidery <mark>Embroid</mark> itch Decorative Stitch CLOSE P. 4 P. 4 Press SET З • Embri Edit 1. AAA 🗱 AB 👓 🔳 100 Exclusives ALWAYS PRESS WHEN REMOVING EMBROIDERY UNIT 6.4 cm ↔ 9.1 cm ¥ 🛃 🏟 🎸 â A Sect 🏂 🁌 🌲 🏨 \$\$\* 32 壘 魏 CLOSE P. 4 P. 4

6 Embroidery Edit







#### Press AAA to enter the alphabet

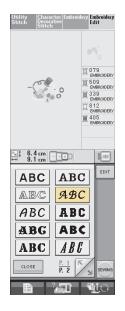
#### characters.



6

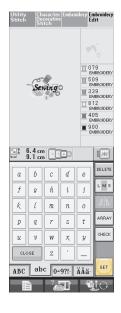
## Select $\mathcal{ABC}$ and enter "Sewing".

After selecting S , press LMS to change the \* character size to M, then enter the remaining characters.



 $\rightarrow$  The characters you enter will be displayed in the center of the display.







#### to move the characters.

With a USB mouse, your finger or the touch pen, \* drag the characters to move them.

#### Press ARRAY to change the layout of the

characters. Press CLOSE

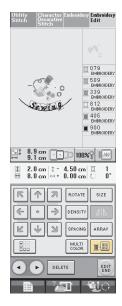
\* See page 207 for more information about changing the layout.



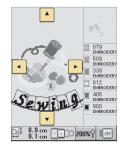
#### Press **T** to change the color of the

#### characters.

\* See page 209 for more information about changing the color.



Press 100% to enlarge the preview of the embroidery pattern.



٠ × to view any part of the pattern that extends out of viewable display area.

- You can select, move or edit the patterns while in \*
  - 200%<sup>©</sup> size.

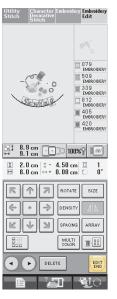
Use 🔺

\*

200%<sup>®</sup> to return to the original display. Press

Ŧ

#### When all editing is finished, press





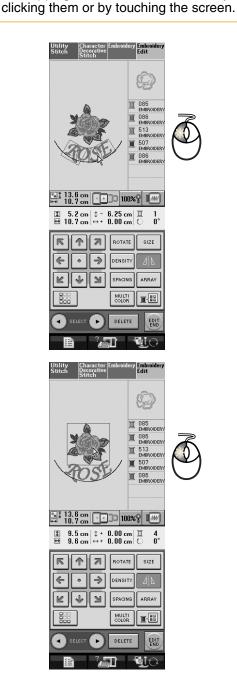
#### Selecting combined embroidery patterns

If multiple patterns have been combined, use

to select the pattern to be edited. If a

USB mouse is connected, the pattern can be selected by clicking it. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired pattern, and then click the left mouse button. In addition, patterns can be selected by directly touching the screen with your finger or touch pen.

Memo
 Use ester to select patterns that are overlapping and cannot be selected by



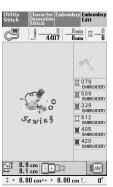
## **Sewing Combined Patterns**

Combined patterns will be embroidered in the order they were entered. In this example, the embroidery order will be as follows:

Note Follow the directions in "Sewing Embroidery Patterns" on page 166.

Embroider

color order on the right side of the display.



→ When the design is finished, the [+] cursor will move to the "Sewing" part of the pattern.

## Embroider *Cewi*ng.



→ When "Sewing" is embroidered, the display returns to the sewing screen.

# **USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION**

In the same way as embroidery patterns in Chapter 5, you can save and retrieve edited embroidery patterns to and from the machine's memory, a personal computer, or USB media. Refer to the relevant sections in Chapter 5 on saving and retrieving embroidery patterns and follow the same procedures in order to save and retrieve edited embroidery patterns. See page 185 for more information about the MEMORY FUNCTION.





# Chapter 7 Appendix

| CARE AND MAINTENANCE                 |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Cleaning the LCD Screen226           |  |
| Cleaning the Machine Casing226       |  |
| Cleaning the Race226                 |  |
| Cleaning the Bobbin Case227          |  |
| ADJUSTING THE SCREEN                 |  |
| Screen Visibility is Low228          |  |
| Touch Panel is Malfunctioning228     |  |
| TROUBLESHOOTING                      |  |
| ERROR MESSAGES233                    |  |
| ■ Alarm Sounds                       |  |
| SPECIFICATIONS                       |  |
| UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE240 |  |
| Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media240 |  |
| Upgrade Procedure Using Computer     |  |

# CARE AND MAINTENANCE

# 

Be sure to unplug the machine before cleaning it. Otherwise, electric shock or injury may result.

# **Cleaning the LCD Screen**

If the screen is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use organic solvents or detergents.

# **Cleaning the Machine Casing**

If the surface of the machine is dirty, lightly soak a cloth in a neutral detergent, squeeze it out firmly, and then wipe the surface. Then wipe again with a dry cloth.

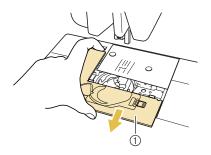
# **Cleaning the Race**

If dust or bits of dirt collect in the race or bobbin case, the machine will not run well, and the bobbin thread detection function may not operate. Keep the machine clean for best results.

- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- Turn the main power to OFF.

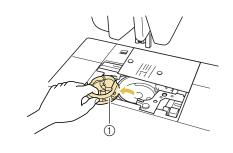
Remove the needle and the presser foot holder (see pages 37 through 39).

- Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either is attached.
  - Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.

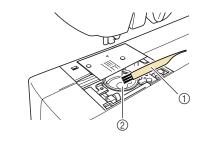


- ① Needle plate cover
- $\rightarrow$  The needle plate cover is removed.

**6** Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.



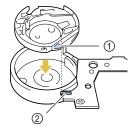
- ① Bobbin case
- Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and its surrounding area.
  - \* Do not apply oil to the bobbin case.

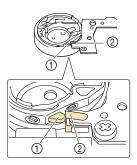


- ① Cleaning brush
- ② Race

8

Insert the bobbin case so that the projection on the bobbin case aligns with the spring.





- ① Projection
- ② Spring
- Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.



#### <mark>とく Note</mark>

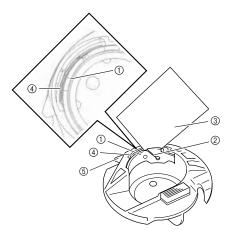
- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XC3153-051 (green screw), XC8167-051 (pink screw)), contact your nearest authorized retailer.
- Be sure that the bobbin case is correctly installed. Otherwise, the needle may break.
- If the needle plate has been removed it is especially important to reinstall the needle plate and tighten the screws prior to installing the bobbin case.

# **Cleaning the Bobbin Case**

Thread wax and dust easily collect around the notch in the tension spring on the bobbin case, resulting in an incorrect thread tension. Therefore, the bobbin case should be cleaned as necessary should tension problems arise.

When cleaning the bobbin case, use card stock or another type of paper of similar thickness and sturdiness in order to prevent pieces of paper tearing off and getting lodged in the bobbin case.

- Follow steps "Cleaning the Race" on page 226.
- Using a piece of paper of adequate thickness and sturdiness, slide the paper between the tension plate base and the tension spring and also slide the paper behind the notch of the spring to remove any dirt or dust.



- ① Tension plate base
- 2 Notch
- ③ Paper (e.g. business card type)
- ④ Tension spring
- (5) Bobbin case projection (stopper)

#### 🔊 Memo

Do not bend the tension spring. In addition, do not use anything other than recommended paper to clean the bobbin case.

- 3 Use the included cleaning brush to remove any lint and dust from inside the bobbin case.
- Reinsert the bobbin case and needle plate cover assuming the bobbin case projection (stopper) is touching the bracket spring. (Follow steps <sup>3</sup> and <sup>3</sup> from the previous section.)

# **ADJUSTING THE SCREEN**

## Screen Visibility is Low

If the screen is difficult to see when you turn on the power, follow the steps below.



Press your finger anywhere on the screen. Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.



 $\rightarrow$  BRIGHTNESS OF LCD is displayed.



Use the |+|, |-| keys to adjust the screen

until you can see it easily.

| BROGHTTNESS OF | 40 |
|----------------|----|
| LCD            | 40 |
| -              | +  |
|                |    |

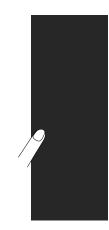
| 2            |  |
|--------------|--|
| $\mathbf{U}$ |  |
| <u> </u>     |  |

Turn the main power to OFF and back to ON.

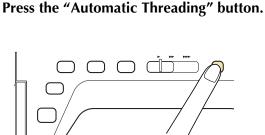
# **Touch Panel is Malfunctioning**

If the screen does not respond correctly when you touch a key (the machine does not perform the operation or performs a different operation), follow the steps below to make the proper adjustments.

- - Press your finger anywhere on the screen. Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.



 $\rightarrow$  BRIGHTNESS OF LCD is displayed.



 $\rightarrow$  The touch panel adjustment screen is displayed.

# Using the included touch pen, lightly touch the center of each +, in order from 1 to 5.

- \* If the buzzer sounds one time after you press number 5, the operation is finished. If the buzzer sounds twice, there was an error. In this case, repeat the steps above.
- <mark>ヒ Note</mark>
  - Only use the included touch pen to touch the screen. Do not use a mechanical pencil, pin, or other sharp object. Do not press strongly on the screen. Otherwise, damage may result.



4

Turn the main power to OFF, then turn it back to ON.

#### レ Note

 If you finish the screen adjustment and the screen still does not respond, or if you cannot do the adjustment, contact your authorized retailer.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

If you have a minor problem with your sewing machine, check the following solutions. If the solutions suggested do not correct the problem, contact your authorized retailer. You can also press then

TROUBLESHOOTING for advice about minor sewing problems during sewing. Press at any time to return to the original screen.

| Problem                  | Cause                                                                                                                                    | Solution                                                                        | Page    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Upper thread breaks      | Machine is not threaded correctly (used the wrong spool cap, spool cap is loose, the thread did not catch the needle bar threader, etc.) | Rethread the machine correctly.                                                 | 29      |
|                          | Thread is knotted or tangled.                                                                                                            | Rethread upper and lower thread.                                                | 26, 29  |
|                          | Thread is too thick for the needle.                                                                                                      | Check needle and thread combinations.                                           | 41      |
|                          | Upper thread tension is too strong.                                                                                                      | Adjust the thread tension.                                                      | 50, 174 |
|                          | Thread is twisted.                                                                                                                       | Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc. | _       |
|                          | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                                                                                             | Replace the needle.                                                             | 39      |
|                          | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                                                                                         | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                                 | 39      |
|                          | There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate.                                                                                   | Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized retailer.                  | 65      |
|                          | There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot.                                                                                   | Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized retailer.                  | 37      |
|                          | There are scratches on the race.                                                                                                         | Replace the race, or consult your authorized retailer.                          | 226     |
| Bobbin thread breaks     | Bobbin is set incorrectly.                                                                                                               | Reset the bobbin thread correctly.                                              | 26      |
|                          | There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly.                                                                         | Replace the bobbin.                                                             | 26      |
|                          | Thread is twisted.                                                                                                                       | Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.  | _       |
| Skipped stitches         | Machine is threaded incorrectly.                                                                                                         | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.            | 29      |
|                          | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.                                                                                 | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combination" chart.                          | 41      |
|                          | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                                                                                             | Replace the needle.                                                             | 39      |
|                          | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                                                                                         | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                                 | 39      |
|                          | Needle is defective.                                                                                                                     | Replace the needle.                                                             | 39      |
|                          | Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate.                                                                                       | Remove the dust or lint with the brush.                                         | 226     |
| abric puckers            | There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading.                                                                                     | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.            | 26, 29  |
|                          | Spool cap is set incorrectly.                                                                                                            | Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.      | 29      |
|                          | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.                                                                                 | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combination" chart.                          | 41      |
|                          | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                                                                                             | Replace the needle.                                                             | 39      |
|                          | Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics.                                                                                          | Shorten the stitch length.                                                      | 49      |
|                          | Thread tension is set incorrectly.                                                                                                       | Adjust the thread tension.                                                      | 50, 174 |
|                          | Wrong presser foot.                                                                                                                      | Use the correct presser foot.                                                   | 243     |
| ligh-pitched sound       | Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs.                                                                                                 | Remove the dust or lint.                                                        | 226     |
| vhile sewing             | Pieces of thread are caught in the race.                                                                                                 | Clean the race.                                                                 | 226     |
|                          | Upper threading is incorrect.                                                                                                            | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.             | 29      |
|                          | There are scratches on the race.                                                                                                         | Replace the race, or consult your authorized retailer.                          | 226     |
| Cannot thread the needle | Needle is not in the correct position.                                                                                                   | Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.                         | 3       |
|                          | Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.                                                                              | Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.                         | 3       |
|                          | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                                                                                         | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                                 | 39      |

| Problem                                                         | Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Page    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Cannot lower the<br>presser foot with the<br>presser foot lever | Presser foot was raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.                                                                                                                                                     | Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.                                                                                                                                                                      | 3       |
| Thread tension is ncorrect                                      | Upper threading is incorrect.                                                                                                                                                                                       | Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.                                                                                                                                                                    | 29      |
|                                                                 | Bobbin is set incorrectly.                                                                                                                                                                                          | Reset the bobbin. (If needle plate was<br>removed, reinstall needle plate and tighten<br>screws prior to installing bobbin case.)                                                                                                      | 26      |
|                                                                 | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.                                                                                                                                                            | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combination" chart.                                                                                                                                                                                 | 41      |
|                                                                 | Presser foot holder is not attached correctly.                                                                                                                                                                      | Reattach the presser foot holder correctly.                                                                                                                                                                                            | 38      |
|                                                                 | Thread tension is set incorrectly.                                                                                                                                                                                  | Adjust the thread tension.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 50, 174 |
| Character pattern                                               | Wrong presser foot was used.                                                                                                                                                                                        | Attach the correct presser foot.                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 243     |
| loes not turn out                                               | Pattern adjustment settings were set incorrectly.                                                                                                                                                                   | Revise the pattern adjustment settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                | 121     |
|                                                                 | Did not use a stabilizer material on thin fabrics or stretch fabrics.                                                                                                                                               | Attach a stabilizer material.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 120     |
|                                                                 | Thread tension is set incorrectly.                                                                                                                                                                                  | Adjust the thread tension.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 50, 174 |
| Embroidery pattern<br>does not sew out                          | Thread is twisted.                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.                                                                                                                                                        | _       |
| correctly                                                       | Fabric was not inserted into the frame correctly (fabric was loose, etc.).                                                                                                                                          | If the fabric is not stretched tight in the frame,<br>the pattern may turn out poorly or there may<br>be shrinkage of the pattern. Set the fabric into<br>the frame correctly.                                                         | 159     |
|                                                                 | Stabilizing material was not attached.                                                                                                                                                                              | Always use stabilizing material, especially<br>with stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics<br>with a coarse weave, or fabrics that often<br>cause pattern shrinkage. See your authorized<br>retailer for the proper stabilizer. | 157     |
|                                                                 | There was an object placed near the machine,<br>and the carriage or embroidery frame hit the<br>object during sewing.                                                                                               | If the frame bumps something during sewing,<br>the pattern will turn out poorly. Do not place<br>anything in the area where the frame may<br>bump it during sewing.                                                                    | 165     |
|                                                                 | Fabric outside the frame edges interferes with the sewing arm, so the embroidery unit cannot move.                                                                                                                  | Reinsert the fabric in the embroidery frame so<br>that the excess fabric is away from the sewing<br>arm, and rotate the pattern 180 degrees.                                                                                           | 159     |
|                                                                 | Fabric is too heavy, so the embroidery unit cannot move freely.                                                                                                                                                     | Place the machine on a large enough table to support the weight of the fabric being embroidered.                                                                                                                                       | _       |
|                                                                 | Fabric is hanging off the table.                                                                                                                                                                                    | If the fabric is hanging off the table during<br>embroidery, the embroidery unit will not move<br>freely. Place the fabric so that it does not hang<br>off the table or hold the fabric to keep it from<br>dragging.                   | 165     |
|                                                                 | Fabric is snagged or caught on something.                                                                                                                                                                           | Stop the machine and place the fabric so that it does not get caught or snagged.                                                                                                                                                       |         |
|                                                                 | Embroidery frame was removed during sewing<br>(for example, to reset the bobbin). The presser<br>foot was bumped or moved while removing or<br>attaching the embroidery frame, or the<br>embroidery unit was moved. | If the presser foot is bumped or the<br>embroidery unit is moved during sewing, the<br>pattern will not turn out. Be careful when<br>removing or reattaching the embroidery frame<br>during sewing.                                    | 170     |

| Problem                                                   | Cause                                                             | Solution                                                                               | Page              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Needle breaks                                             | Needle is installed incorrectly.                                  | Reinstall the needle correctly.                                                        | 39                |
|                                                           | Needle clamp screw is not tightened.                              | Tighten the needle clamp screw.                                                        | 40                |
|                                                           | Needle is turned or bent.                                         | Replace the needle.                                                                    | 39                |
|                                                           | Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.          | Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle<br>Combination" chart.                                 | 41                |
|                                                           | Wrong presser foot was used.                                      | Use the recommended presser foot.                                                      | 243               |
|                                                           | Upper thread tension is too strong.                               | Adjust the thread tension setting.                                                     | 50, 174           |
|                                                           | Fabric is pulled during sewing.                                   | Do not pull the fabric during sewing.                                                  | _                 |
|                                                           | Spool cap is set incorrectly.                                     | Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.             | 29                |
|                                                           | There are scratches around the holes in the needle plate.         | Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized retailer.                         | 65                |
|                                                           | There are scratches around the hole(s) in the presser foot.       | Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized retailer.                         | 37                |
|                                                           | There are scratches on the race.                                  | Replace the race, or consult your authorized retailer.                                 | 226               |
|                                                           | Needle is defective.                                              | Replace the needle.                                                                    | 39                |
| Fabric does not feed<br>through the machine               | Feed dogs are set in the down position.                           | Use the feed dog position lever to raise the feed dogs.                                | 85                |
|                                                           | Stitches are too close together.                                  | Lengthen the stitch length setting.                                                    | 49                |
|                                                           | Wrong presser foot was used.                                      | Use the correct presser foot.                                                          | 243               |
|                                                           | Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.                      | Replace the needle.                                                                    | 39                |
|                                                           | Thread is entangled.                                              | Cut the entangled thread and remove it from the race.                                  |                   |
| Machine does not<br>operate                               | There is no pattern selected.                                     | Select a pattern.                                                                      | 59, 116, 149, 199 |
|                                                           | "Start/Stop" button was not pushed.                               | Press the "Start/Stop" button.                                                         | 3                 |
|                                                           | Main power switch is not turned on.                               | Turn the main power to ON.                                                             | 10                |
|                                                           | Presser foot is not lowered.                                      | Lower the presser foot.                                                                | 3                 |
|                                                           | "Start/Stop" button was pushed with the foot controller attached. | Remove the foot controller, or use the foot controller to operate the machine.         | 45                |
|                                                           | Speed control lever is set to control the zigzag stitch width.    | Use the foot controller instead of the "Start/<br>Stop" button to operate the machine. | 45                |
|                                                           | All keys and buttons have been locked by                          | Press to unlock all keys and buttons.                                                  | 37, 39            |
| Embroidery unit does<br>not operate                       | There is no pattern selected.                                     | Select a pattern.                                                                      | 149, 199          |
|                                                           | Main power switch is not turned on.                               | Turn the main power to ON.                                                             | 10                |
|                                                           | Embroidery unit is not attached correctly.                        | Reattach the embroidery unit correctly.                                                | 146               |
|                                                           | Embroidery frame was attached before the unit was initialized.    | Perform the initialization process correctly.                                          | 146               |
| LCD display is difficult to see                           | LCD contrast is not properly adjusted.                            | Adjust the LCD contrast.                                                               | 19, 228           |
| Nothing happens,<br>even if the LCD<br>display is pressed | The screen has been locked.                                       | Press either of the following keys to unlock the screen.                               | _                 |

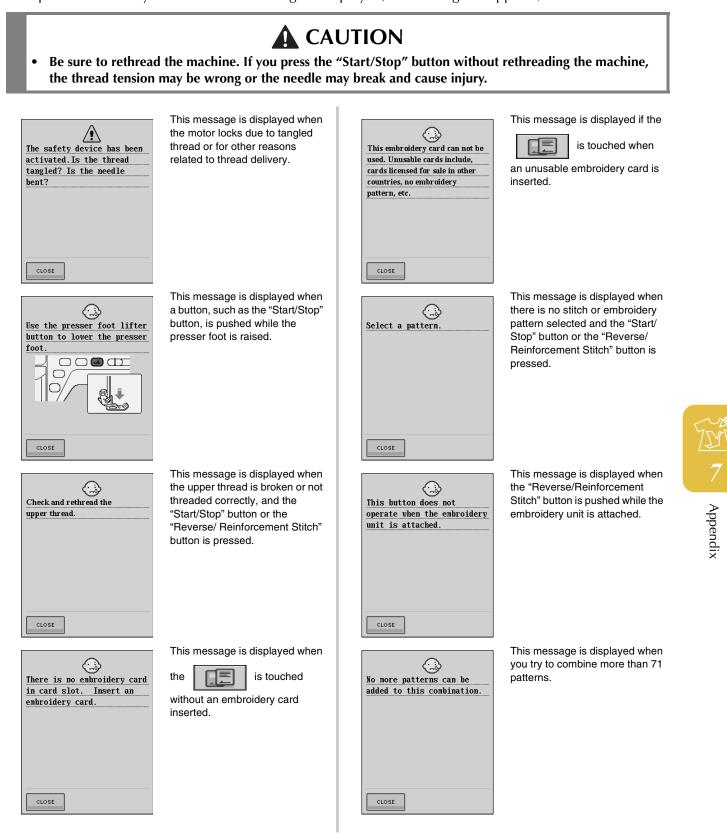
# **CAUTION**

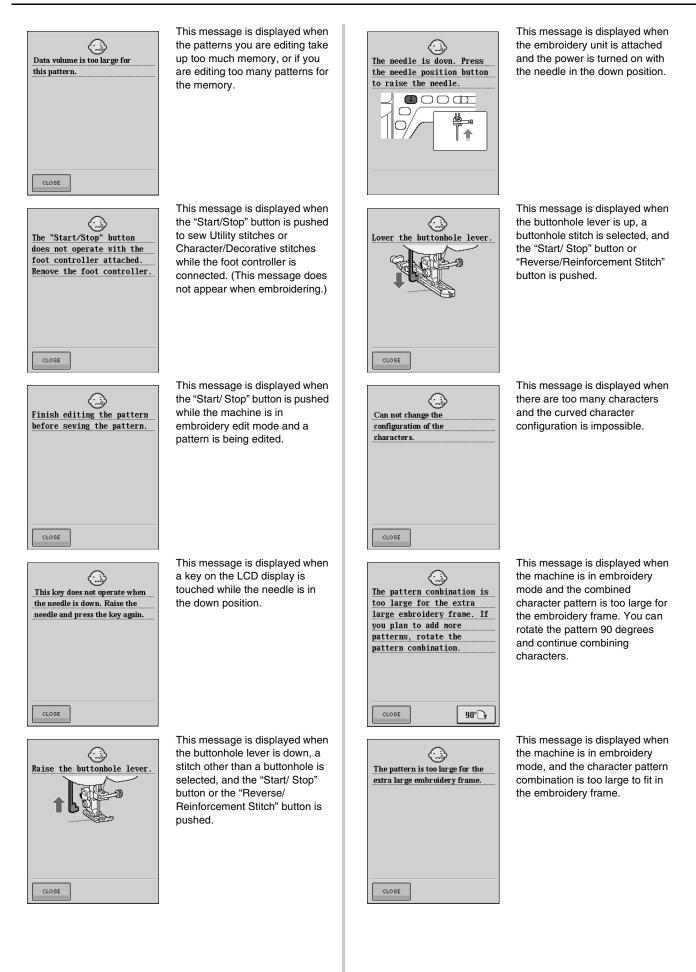
- This machine is equipped with a thread detection device. If the "Start/Stop" button is pushed before the upper threading is done, the machine will not operate properly. Also, depending on the pattern selected, the machine may feed the fabric even if the needle is raised. This is due to the needle bar release mechanism. At these times, the machine will make a sound different from that made during normal sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction.
- If the power is disconnected during sewing: Turn the main power to OFF and unplug the machine. If you restart the machine, follow the instructions for operating the machine correctly.

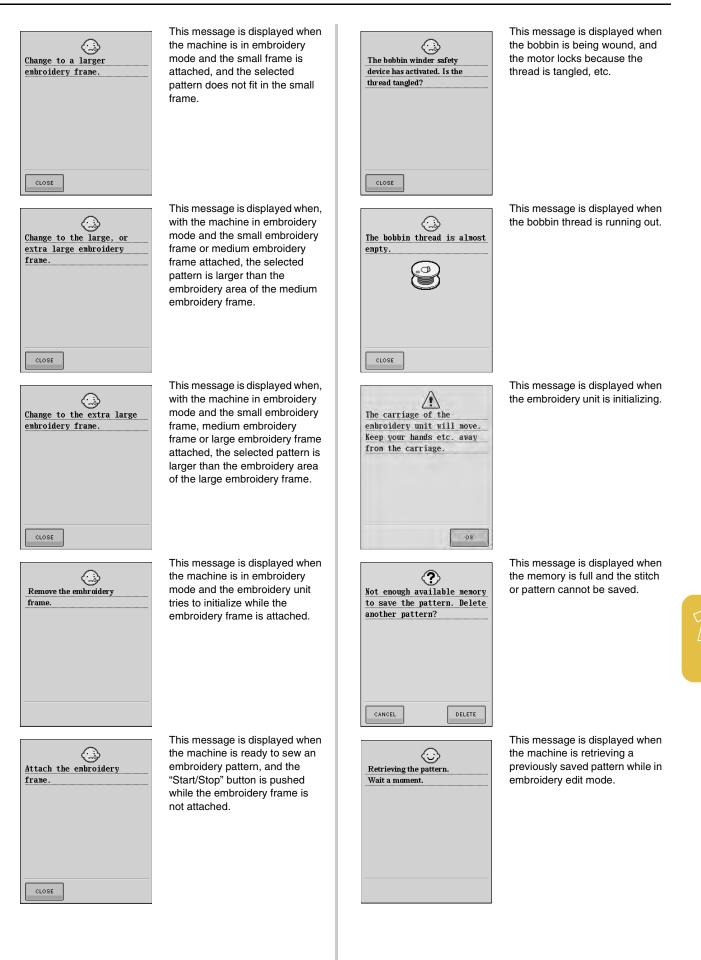
# **ERROR MESSAGES**

If the machine is not properly set and the "Start/Stop" button or the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed, or if the operation procedure is incorrect, the machine does not start. An alarm sounds and an error message is displayed on the LCD. If an error message displays, follow the instructions in the message.

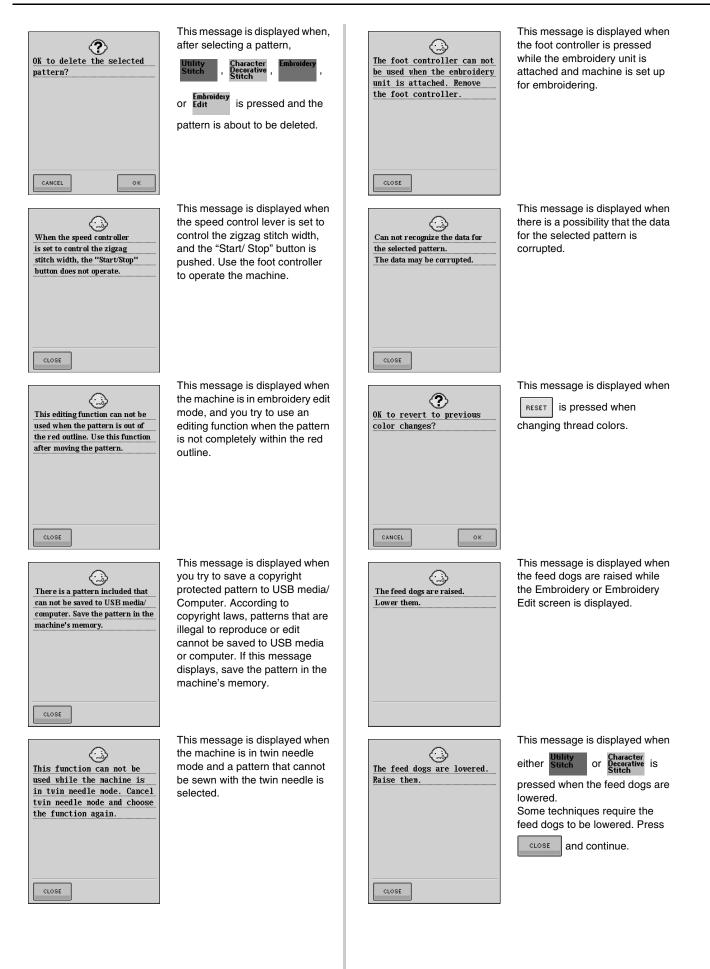
Below is an explanation of 55 error messages. Refer to these when necessary (if you press or do the operation correctly while the error message is displayed, the message disappears).

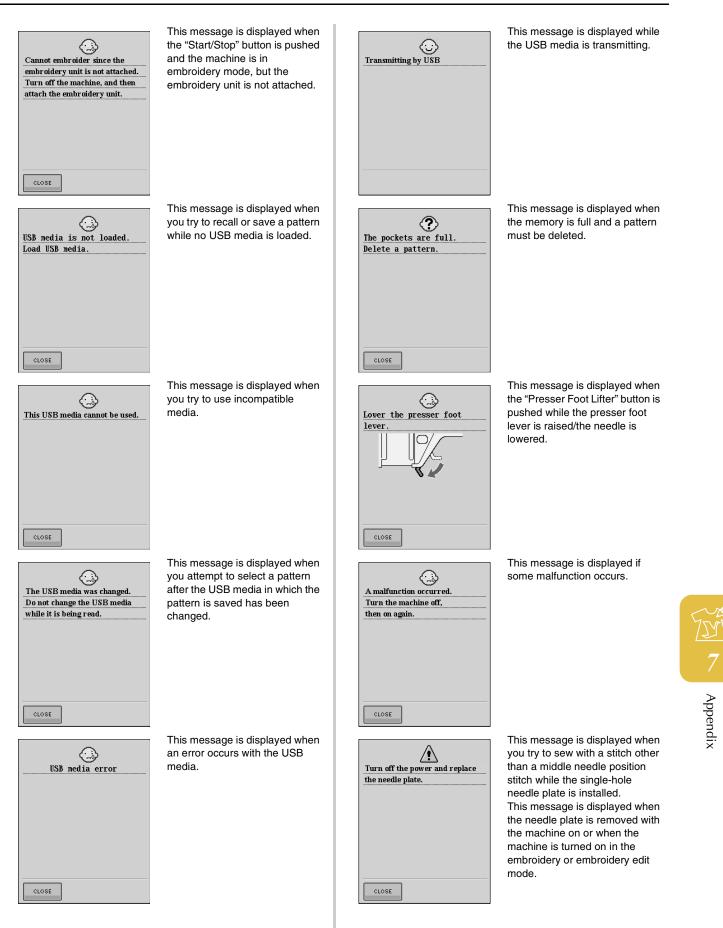


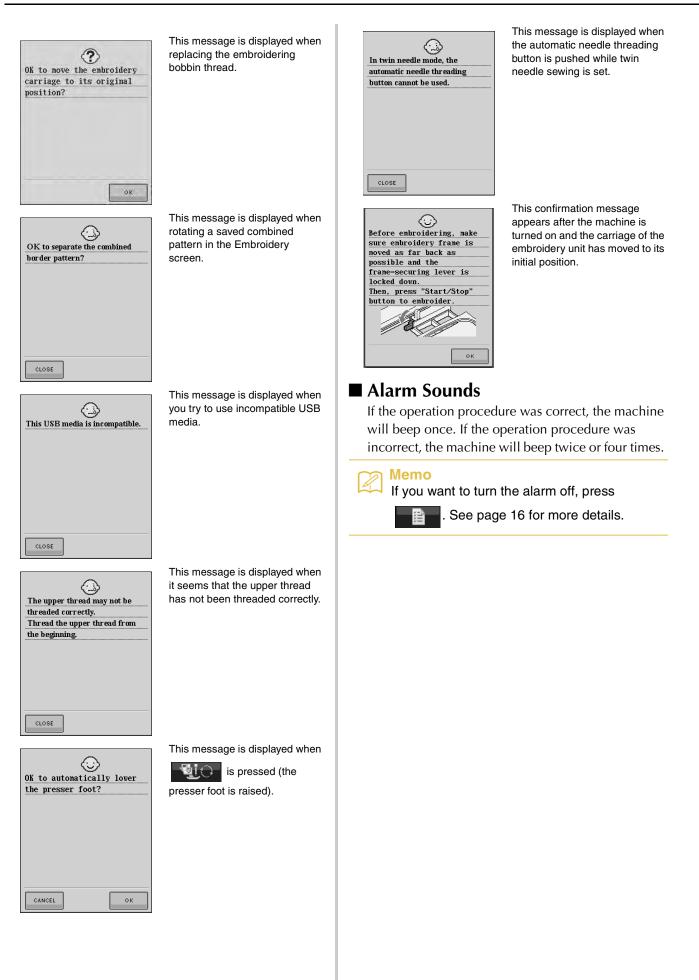




7 Appendix







# **SPECIFICATIONS**

|                 | Item                                                   | Specification                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sewing Machine  | Dimensions                                             | 55.6 cm (W) $\times$ 30.5 cm (H) $\times$ 25.8 cm (D) (approx. 21-7/8 inches (W) $\times$ 12 inches (H) $\times$ 10-1/8 inches (D))   |
|                 | Case Dimensions                                        | 58.2 cm (W) × 31.9 cm (H) × 28.4 cm (D) (approx.<br>22-7/8 inches (W) × 12-1/2 inches (H) × 11-1/8 inches (D))                        |
|                 | Weight                                                 | 12 kg (27 lb.) (with case: 14.3 kg (32 lb.))                                                                                          |
|                 | Sewing speed                                           | 70 to 1000 stitches per minute                                                                                                        |
|                 | Needles                                                | Home sewing machine needles (HA × 130)                                                                                                |
| Embroidery Unit | Dimensions                                             | 45.8 cm (W) $\times$ 13.1 cm (H) $\times$ 46.2 cm (D) (approx.<br>18 inches (W) $\times$ 5-1/8 inches (H) $\times$ 18-1/4 inches (D)) |
|                 | Dimensions of machine with<br>embroidery unit attached | 72.4 cm (W) × 30.5 cm (H) × 46.2 cm (D) (approx.<br>28-1/2 inches (W) × 12 inches (H) × 18-1/4 inches (D))                            |
|                 | Weight                                                 | 3.6 kg (8 lb.)                                                                                                                        |

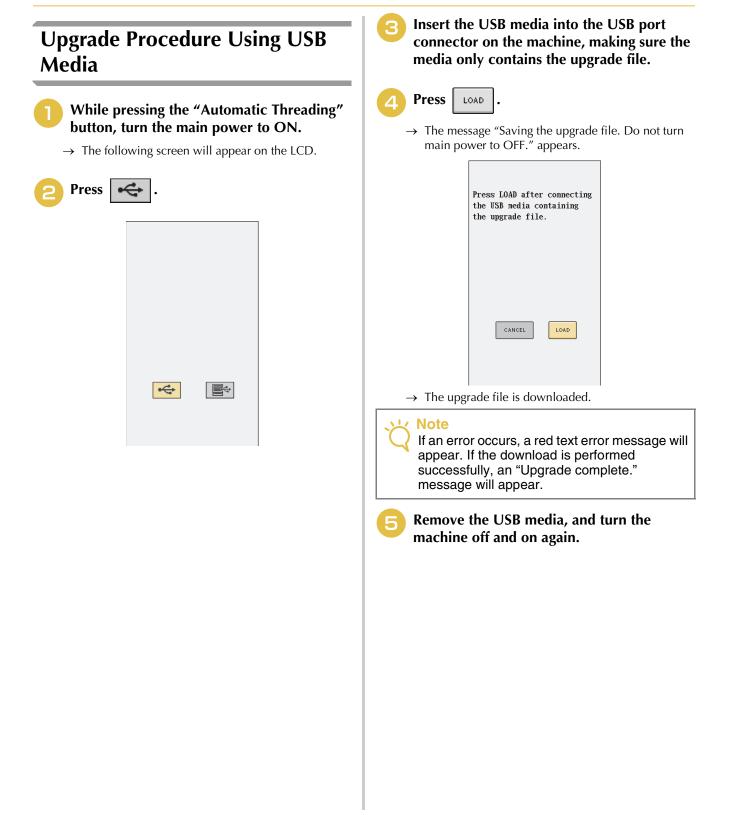


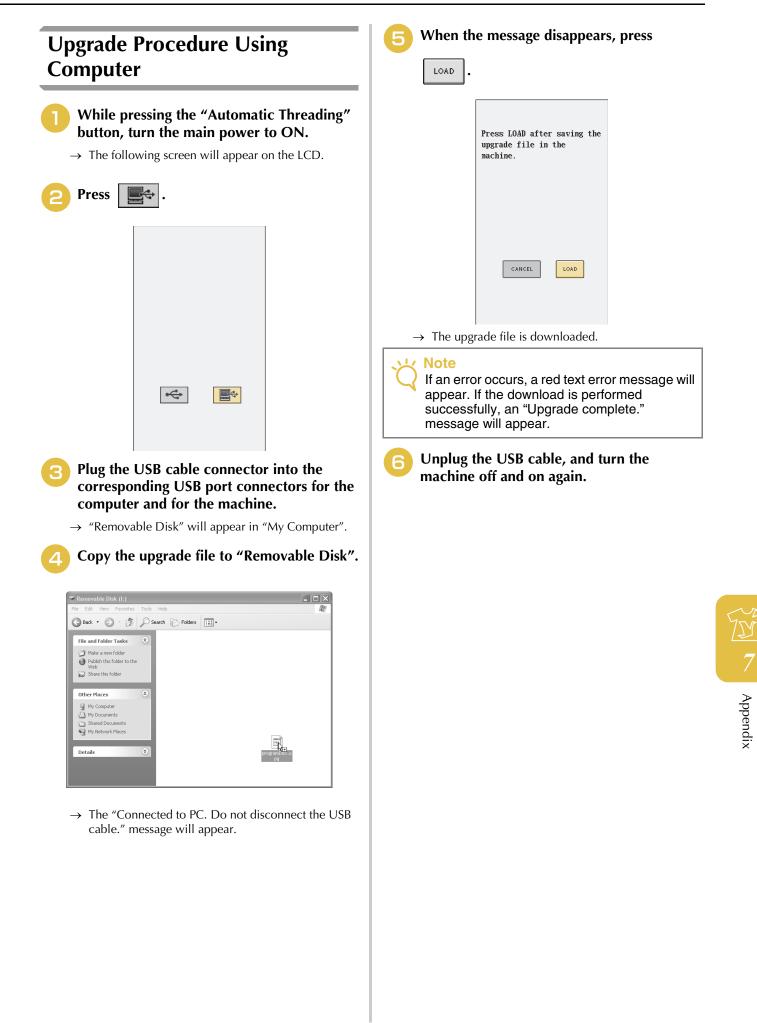
# **UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE**

You can use USB media or a computer to download software upgrades for your sewing machine. When an upgrade program is available on www.babylock.com, please download the files following the instructions on the web site and steps below.

#### n Memo

- When the machine's software is upgraded, saved combinations of character and decorative stitches are erased.
- During the process of upgrading software, the buzzer will not sound when a key is pressed.





# **STITCH SETTING CHART**

The following chart shows information for each utility stitch concerning applications, stitch lengths, stitch widths, and whether or not the twin needle mode can be used.

| Stitch                                  | Stitch name                 | Presse | er foot | Applications                                                                                                                       |               | tch width<br>m (inch.)]    | Stitch length<br>[mm (inch.)] |                                   | Twin        |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
|                                         |                             | ്      | Ĩ       |                                                                                                                                    | Auto.         | Manual                     | Auto.                         | Manual                            | needle      |
| 1-01<br>  <br> <br> <br>                | Straight stitch<br>(Left)   | ° J    | 2       | General sewing, gather, pintuck,<br>etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while<br>pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button.        | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-02<br>i<br>i<br>i<br>i                | Straight stitch<br>(Left)   | ¢ J    |         | General sewing, gather, pintuck,<br>etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn<br>while pressing "Reverse/<br>Reinforcement Stitch" button. | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-03<br>  <br> <br> <br>                | Straight stitch<br>(Middle) | Ĵ      |         | General sewing, gather, pintuck,<br>etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while<br>pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button.        | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-04<br>i<br>i<br>i                     | Straight stitch<br>(Middle) | Ĵ      |         | General sewing, gather, pintuck,<br>etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn<br>while pressing "Reverse/<br>Reinforcement Stitch" button. | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-05<br>   <br>   <br>                  | Triple stretch<br>stitch    | L<br>L |         | General sewing for reinforcement<br>and decorative topstitching                                                                    | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-06<br>4<br>7                          | Stem stitch                 | f 1    | 2       | Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications                                                                           | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 3.0<br>(1/16 - 1/8)  | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-07<br>1<br>11<br>11<br>11<br>11<br>11 | Decorative<br>stitch        | R      | 2       | Decorative stitching, top stitching                                                                                                | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-08<br> <br>                           | Basting stitch              | ° J    | 2       | Basting                                                                                                                            | 0.0<br>(0)    | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 20.0<br>(3/4)                 | 5.0 - 30.0<br>(3/16 - 1-3/<br>16) | NO          |
| 1-09                                    | Zigzag stitch               | £      |         | For overcasting, mending. Reverse<br>stitch is sewn while pressing<br>"Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch"<br>button.                    | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16)                 | 0.0 - 4.0<br>(0 - 3/16)           | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-10                                    | Zigzag stitch               | Ĵ      |         | For overcasting, mending.<br>Reinforcement stitch is sewn while<br>pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement<br>Stitch" button.              | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16)                 | 0.0 - 4.0<br>(0 - 3/16)           | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-11<br>\$                              | Zigzag stitch<br>(right)    | ĴĴ     |         | Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.                                                                              | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 1.4<br>(1/16)                 | 0.3 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-12<br>><br>>                          | Zigzag stitch<br>(left)     | ۴J     | 2       | Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.                                                                              | 3.5<br>(1/8)  | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 1.4<br>(1/16)                 | 0.3 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-13                                    | 2 step elastic<br>zigzag    | ° J    |         | Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic                                                                  | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)  | 1.0<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-14                                    | 2 step elastic<br>zigzag    | *J     | 2       | Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic                                                                  | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)  | 1.0<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)        | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-15                                    | 3 step elastic<br>zigzag    | *J     |         | Overcasting (medium,<br>heavyweight and stretch fabrics),<br>tape and elastic                                                      | 5.0<br>(3/16) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)  | 1.0<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)        | ОК<br>(Ј)   |

| Stitch                                  | Stitch name                           | Presser foot | Applications                                                                                  |                    | itch width<br>m (inch.)]   |               | tch length<br>m (inch.)]   | Twin        |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
|                                         |                                       | <b>6</b>     |                                                                                               | Auto.              | Manual                     | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle      |
|                                         | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | G            | Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics                                                | 3.5<br>(1/8)       | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-17                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | G            | Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric                                                             | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 2.5 - 5.0<br>(3/32 - 3/16) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
|                                         | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | G            | Reinforcing of medium,<br>heavyweight and easily frayable<br>fabrics or decorative stitching. | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-19                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 |              | Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric                                                          | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 9/32)    | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.5 - 4.0<br>(1/32 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-20                                    | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | 17 2         | Reinforcing of medium stretch<br>fabric and heavyweight fabric,<br>decorative stitching       | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 9/32)    | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.5 - 4.0<br>(1/32 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-21<br> X<br> X<br> X                  | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | 17 2         | Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching                                       | 4.0<br>(3/16)      | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 1-22<br> <br>                           | Overcasting<br>stitch                 | 17 2         | Stretch knit seam                                                                             | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-23                                    | Single diamond<br>overcast            |              | Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric                                                      | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)  | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-24                                    | Single diamond<br>overcast            | 17 2         | Reinforcement of stretch fabric                                                               | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)  | 1.8<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 1-25<br> <br> <br>  S                   | With side cutter                      | 3 s          | Straight stitch while cutting fabrics                                                         | 0.0<br>(0)         | 0.0 - 2.5<br>(0 - 3/32)    | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-26<br>\$                              | With side cutter                      | ۶.<br>S      | Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics                                                           | 3.5<br>(1/8)       | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 4.0<br>(0 - 3/16)    | NO          |
| 1-27<br>>S                              | With side cutter                      | З s          | Overcasting stitch while cutting<br>fabrics                                                   | 3.5<br>(1/8)       | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-28                                    | With side cutter                      | 2 s          | Overcasting stitch while cutting<br>fabrics                                                   | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-29                                    | With side cutter                      | <u>j</u> s   | Overcasting stitch while cutting<br>fabrics                                                   | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.5 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)  | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-30<br> <br> <br>  P                   | Piecing stitch<br>(Right)             |              | Piecework/patchwork<br>6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right<br>seam allowance                      | 5.5<br>(7/32)      | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-31<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>1<br>1 | Piecing stitch<br>(Middle)            |              | Piecework/patchwork                                                                           | -                  | _                          | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-32<br> <br> <br>  P                   | Piecing stitch<br>(Left)              |              | Piecework/patchwork<br>6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left<br>seam allowance                       | 1.5<br>(1/16)      | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-33<br>   <br>   <br>  <br>   Q        | Hand-look<br>quilting                 |              | Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch                                        | 0.0<br>(0)         | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-34.<br>Sq                             | Quilting<br>appliqué zigzag<br>stitch | <b>"</b> ]   | Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces                                | 3.5<br>(1/8)       | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16) | 0.0 - 4.0<br>(0 - 3/16)    | NO          |

| Stitch                                       | Stitch name                            | Press      | er foot  | Applications                                                   | Stitch width<br>[mm (inch.)] |                            | Stitch length<br>[mm (inch.)] |                            | Twin        |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------|
|                                              |                                        | ( <b>°</b> | <u> </u> |                                                                | Auto.                        | Manual                     | Auto.                         | Manual                     | needle      |
| 1-35<br>                                     | Quilting<br>appliqué stitch            | Ţ          | 2        | Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué<br>or attaching binding | 1.5<br>(1/16)                | 0.5 - 5.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | 1.8<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 1-36<br>33<br>32<br>22<br>22                 | Quilting<br>stippling                  | ۴J         | 2        | Background quilting                                            | 7.0<br>(1/4)                 | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)  | 1.6<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-01                                         | Blind hem stitch                       |            | 1        | Hemming woven fabrics                                          | 0.0<br>(0)                   | 3 ← - → 3                  | 2.0<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 3.5<br>(1/16 - 1/8)  | NO          |
| 2-02                                         | Blind hem stitch<br>stretch            |            | 2        | Hemming stretch fabric                                         | 0.0<br>(0)                   | 3 ← - → 3                  | 2.0<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 3.5<br>(1/16 - 1/8)  | NO          |
| 2-03                                         | Blanket stitch                         | Ţ          |          | Appliqués, decorative blanket<br>stitch                        | 3.5<br>(1/8)                 | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)  | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.6 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-04<br>1-<br>1-                             | Shell tuck edge                        | Ĵ          |          | Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics                              | 4.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3                                            | Satin scallop<br>stitch                | R          |          | Decorating collar of blouse, edge<br>of handkerchief           | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)  | 0.5<br>(1/32)                 | 0.1 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-06                                         | Scallop stitch                         | R          |          | Decorating collar of blouse, edge<br>of handkerchief           | 7.0<br>(1/4)                 | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.4<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 207/1                                        | Patchwork join<br>stitch               | L<br>J     | 2        | Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching                       | 4.0<br>(1/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.2<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-08                                         | Patchwork<br>double overlock<br>stitch | ſ          |          | Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching                       | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)  | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-09<br>/,/<br>                              | Couching stitch                        | L]         |          | Decorative stitching, attaching cord<br>and couching           | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.2<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-10                                         | Smocking stitch                        | L<br>J     |          | Smocking, decorative stitching                                 | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.6<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-11                                         | Feather stitch                         | L]         |          | Fagoting, decorative stitching                                 | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-12<br>K 4<br>K 4                           | Fagoting cross<br>stitch               | ſ          |          | Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching                    | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)  | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 2-13                                         | Tape attaching                         | L<br>L     |          | Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric                       | 4.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 1.0<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/61 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-14<br>8                                    | Ladder stitch                          | ſ          |          | Decorative stitching                                           | 4.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 3.0<br>(1/8)                  | 2.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 2-15<br>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>> | Rick-rack stitch                       | L<br>J     |          | Decorative top stitching                                       | 4.0<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)     | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-16<br>////                                 | Decorative<br>stitch                   | ſ          |          | Decorative stitching                                           | 1.0<br>(1/16)                | 1.0 - 3.0<br>(1/16 - 1/8)  | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |

| Stitch                     | Stitch name                    | Press    | er foot | Applications                                  | Stitch width<br>[mm (inch.)] |                           | Stitch length<br>[mm (inch.)] |                            | Twin        |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------|---------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------|
|                            |                                | <b>6</b> | Ĩ       |                                               | Auto.                        | Manual                    | Auto.                         | Manual                     | needle      |
| 2-17<br>XXXX               | Decorative<br>stitch           | ۴J       |         | Decorative stitching                          | 5.5<br>(3/16)                | 0.0 - 7.0<br>(0 - 1/4)    | 1.6<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 2-18                       | Serpentine<br>stitch           | R        | 2       | Decorative stitching and attaching elastic    | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.0<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-19 NNNN                  | Decorative<br>stitch           | R        |         | Decorative stitching and appliqué             | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64)           | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.0<br>(1/16)                 | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 2-20<br>%%                 | Decorative<br>stippling stitch | R        |         | Decorative stitching                          | 7.0<br>(1/4)                 | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-01<br>   <br>   <br>     | Hemstitching                   | R        | 2       | Decorative hems, triple straight at left      | 1.0<br>(1/16)                | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-02<br>  <br>  <br>  <br> | Hemstitching                   | R        | 2       | Decorative hems, triple straight at center    | 3.5<br>(1/8)                 | 1.0 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-03                       | Hemstitching<br>zigzag         | R        | 2       | Decorative hems, top stitching                | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64)           | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)                  | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-04<br>E                  | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Decorative hems, lace attaching<br>pin stitch | 3.5<br>(1/8)                 | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.6 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-05                       | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Decorative hems                               | 3.0<br>(1/8)                 | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)                  | 1.6 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-06<br>*<br>*<br>*        | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Decorative hems daisy stitch                  | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64)           | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)                  | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-07<br>♦₽₽                | Hemstitching                   | R        | 2       | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)                  | 1.6 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-08                       | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)                  | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-09                       | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)                  | 1.6 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-10                       | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 4.0<br>(3/16)                 | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| <sup>3-11</sup>            | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 4.0<br>(3/16)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-12                       | Honeycomb<br>stitch            | R        |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 5.0<br>(3/64)                | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32)                 | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| <sup>3-13</sup>            | Honeycomb<br>stitch            | R        | 2       | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64)           | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.5<br>(1/8)                  | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | OK<br>( J ) |
| 3-14<br>X<br>X             | Hemstitching                   | R        |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                     | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64)           | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16)                 | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |

| Stitch                | Stitch name                          | Press          | er foot | Applications                                                  |                    | tch width<br>m (inch.)]   |               | tch length<br>m (inch.)]   | Twin        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
|                       |                                      | <b>6</b>       | Ĩ       |                                                               | Auto.              | Manual                    | Auto.         | Manual                     | needle      |
| 3-15                  | Hemstitching                         | R              | 2       | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-16<br>X<br>X        | Hemstitching                         | R              |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 4.0<br>(3/16) | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 3-17                  | Hemstitching                         | R              |         | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 4.0<br>(3/16)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.5<br>(3/32) | 1.6 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-18                  | Hemstitching                         | R              | 2       | Heirloom, decorative hems                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>(Ј)   |
| 3-19                  | Hemstitching                         | R              | 2       | Decorative hems and bridging stitch                           | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| <sup>3-20</sup>       | Hemstitching                         | R              | 2       | Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon                   | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 3.0<br>(1/8)  | 1.5 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | ОК<br>( J ) |
| 3-21<br>5<br>6        | Hemstitching                         | <b>N</b><br>FR |         | Decorative hems, smocking                                     | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-22<br><b>7</b><br>5 | Hemstitching                         | <b>N</b><br>FR | 2       | Decorative hems, smocking                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| <sup>3-23</sup><br>در | Hemstitching                         | R              | 2       | Decorative hems, smocking                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-24                  | Hemstitching                         | R              | 2       | Decorative hems                                               | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 4.0<br>(1/16 - 3/16) | NO          |
| 3-25                  | Ladder stitch                        | R              | 2       | Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon                   | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 5.0 - 7.0<br>(3/16 - 1/4) | 1.6<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 2.5<br>(1/16 - 3/32) | NO          |
| <sup>4-01</sup>       | Narrow rounded<br>buttonhole         |                | A       | Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics                  | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| 4-02<br><b>D</b>      | Wide round<br>ended<br>buttonhole    |                | A       | Buttonholes with extra space for<br>larger buttons            | 5.5<br>(7/32)      | 3.5 - 5.5<br>(1/8 - 7/32) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| 4-03<br><b>0</b>      | Tapered round<br>ended<br>buttonhole |                |         | Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes                          | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| <sup>4-04</sup>       | Round ended<br>buttonhole            |                |         | Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics     | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| <sup>4-05</sup>       | Round ended<br>buttonhole            |                |         | Buttonholes with bar tack                                     | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| 4-06<br><b>0</b>      | Round double<br>ended<br>buttonhole  |                |         | Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics           | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| 4-07<br><b>[</b>      | Narrow squared<br>buttonhole         |                |         | Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics                | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |
| 4-08                  | Wide squared<br>buttonhole           |                |         | Buttonholes with extra space for<br>larger decorative buttons | 5.5<br>(7/32)      | 3.5 - 5.5<br>(1/8 - 7/32) | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16) | NO          |

| Stitch            | Stitch name                      | Press | er foot | Applications                                                                               |                    | tch width<br>m (inch.)]             |               | tch length<br>m (inch.)]           | Twin   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|-------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|--------|
|                   |                                  | ്     | Ĩ       |                                                                                            | Auto.              | Manual                              | Auto.         | Manual                             | needle |
| 4-09              | Squared<br>buttonhole            |       |         | Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks                                             | 5.0<br>(7/32)      | 3.0 - 5.0<br>(1/8 - 3/16)           | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-10              | Stretch<br>buttonhole            | E ST  |         | Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics                                                   | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64)          | 1.0<br>(1/16) | 0.5 - 2.0<br>(1/32 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-11              | Heirloom<br>buttonhole           |       | A       | Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics                                               | 6.0<br>(15/<br>64) | 3.0 - 6.0<br>(1/8 - 15/64)          | 1.5<br>(1/16) | 1.0 - 3.0<br>(1/1 - 1/8)           | NO     |
| 4-12              | Bound<br>buttonhole              |       | A       | The first step in making bound buttonholes                                                 | 5.0<br>(3/16)      | 0.0 - 6.0<br>(0 - 15/64)            | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.2 - 4.0<br>(1/64 - 3/16)         | NO     |
| 4-13<br><b>[]</b> | Keyhole<br>buttonhole            |       | A       | Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons                        | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 3.0 - 7.0<br>(1/8 - 1/4)            | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-14<br><b>()</b> | Tapered keyhole<br>buttonhole    |       | A       | Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons                      | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 3.0 - 7.0<br>(1/8 - 1/4)            | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-15<br><b>1</b>  | Keyhole<br>buttonhole            |       |         | Buttonholes with vertical bar tack<br>for reinforcement in heavyweight or<br>thick fabrics | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 3.0 - 7.0<br>(1/8 - 1/4)            | 0.5<br>(1/32) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-16              | 4 step<br>buttonhole 1           | R     | 2       | Left side of 4 step buttonhole<br>(Forward stitching)                                      | 5.0<br>(7/32)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)           | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-17              | 4 step<br>buttonhole 2           | R     | 2       | Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole                                                              | 5.0<br>(7/32)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)           | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-18              | 4 step<br>buttonhole 3           | R     |         | Right side of 4 step buttonhole<br>(Reverse stitching)                                     | 5.0<br>(7/32)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)           | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-19              | 4 step<br>buttonhole 4           | R     | 2       | Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole                                                              | 5.0<br>(7/32)      | 1.5 - 7.0<br>(1/16 - 1/4)           | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.2 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-20              | Darning                          |       |         | Darning of medium weight fabric                                                            | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)           | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 2.5<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-21              | Darning                          | - 18  |         | Darning of heavyweight fabric                                                              | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 2.5 - 7.0<br>(3/32 - 1/4)           | 2.0<br>(1/16) | 0.4 - 2.5<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-22<br>10000000  | Bar tack                         |       |         | Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.                                                   | 2.0<br>(1/16)      | 1.0 - 3.0<br>(1/16 - 1/8)           | 0.4<br>(1/64) | 0.3 - 1.0<br>(1/64 - 1/16)         | NO     |
| 4-23<br>⊙         | Button sewing                    |       |         | Attaching buttons                                                                          | 3.5<br>(1/8)       | 2.5 - 4.5<br>(3/32 - 3/16)          | _             | _                                  | NO     |
| 4-24<br>O         | Eyelet                           | R     | 2       | For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.                                                   | 7.0<br>(1/4)       | 7.0 6.0 5.0<br>(1/4 15/64 3/<br>16) | 7.0<br>(1/4)  | 7.0 6.0 5.0<br>(1/4 15/64<br>3/16) | NO     |
| 4-25<br>-316-     | Star eyelet                      | R     |         | For making star-shaped eyelets on holes.                                                   | -                  | _                                   | -             | _                                  | NO     |
| 5-01              | Diagonally left<br>up (Straight) | R     |         | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners              | _                  |                                     | _             | _                                  | NO     |
| 5-02              | Reverse<br>(Straight)            | R     |         | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners              | -                  |                                     | _             | _                                  | NO     |

| Stitch             | Stitch name                         | Press | er foot | Applications                                                                  |       | tch width<br>m (inch.)] | Stitch length<br>[mm (inch.)] |        | Twin   |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|--------|--------|
|                    |                                     | ്     | Ĩ       |                                                                               | Auto. | Manual                  | Auto.                         | Manual | needle |
| 5-03               | Diagonally right<br>up (Straight)   | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-04<br><br>       | Sideways to left<br>(Straight)      | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric                         | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-05<br><br>→      | Sideways to<br>right (Straight)     | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric                         | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-06               | Diagonally left<br>down (Straight)  | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-07<br>¦↓<br>↓↓   | Forward<br>(Straight)               | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-08               | Diagonally right<br>down (Straight) | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-09<br>,~~~<br>,← | Sideways to left<br>(Zigzag)        | R     |         | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric                         | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-10<br>∧∽∽<br>→   | Sideways to<br>right (Zigzag)       | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric                         | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-11               | Forward<br>(Zigzag)                 | R     | 2       | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |
| 5-12<br>\$ ↑       | Reverse<br>(Zigzag)                 | R     |         | For attaching appliqué on tubular<br>pieces of fabric and mitering<br>corners | -     | _                       | -                             | _      | NO     |

# Index

# A

| Accessories                        |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| included accessories               |               |
| options                            | 7             |
| Accessory compartment              |               |
| Adjustments                        |               |
| screen                             |               |
| screen brightness                  |               |
| stitch pattern                     |               |
| Air vent                           |               |
| Alarm sounds                       |               |
| Alphabet characters                |               |
| character/decorative stitches      |               |
| embroidery                         |               |
| embroidery edit                    |               |
| Appliqué                           |               |
| embroidery patterns                |               |
| quilting                           |               |
| using a zigzag stitch              | 71            |
| using an embroidery frame pattern  |               |
| Array key                          |               |
| Arrow keys                         | 179, 205, 220 |
| automatic fabric sensor system     |               |
| Automatic reinforcement stitch key | 51            |
| Automatic thread cutting key       |               |
| Automatic Threading button         |               |

## B

| Back to beginning key126                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bar tacks                                                      |
| Basting67                                                      |
| Blind hem stitches                                             |
| Bobbin                                                         |
| pulling up the bobbin thread28                                 |
| runs out of thread170                                          |
| setting26                                                      |
| winding23                                                      |
| Bobbin case (green screw, pink screw) 165, 226                 |
| Bobbin cover                                                   |
| Bobbin holder (switch)25                                       |
| Bobbin winder1                                                 |
| Border key                                                     |
| Button sewing 107                                              |
| 4 hole buttons108                                              |
| shank108                                                       |
| Buttonhole lever2, 99, 104                                     |
| Buttonholes                                                    |
| four-step101                                                   |
| odd-shaped/buttons that do not fit the button holder plate 100 |
| one-step                                                       |
|                                                                |

# C

| Character spacing key         |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Character/Decorative Stitches |  |
| adjustments                   |  |
| combining                     |  |
| editing                       |  |
| key functions                 |  |
| retrieving                    |  |
| saving                        |  |
| selecting                     |  |
| sewing                        |  |
| stitch selection screens      |  |
| Cleaning                      |  |
| LCD screen                    |  |
| machine casing                |  |
| race                          |  |
|                               |  |

#### 

## D

| Darning     | 103 |
|-------------|-----|
| Dart seam   | 67  |
| Density key |     |

#### E

| echo quilting                             | 86         |
|-------------------------------------------|------------|
| Edit end key                              |            |
| Editing                                   |            |
| character/decorative stitches             | 123        |
| embroidery                                |            |
| embroidery edit                           |            |
| Elastic zigzag stitches                   |            |
| Elongation key                            |            |
| Embroidery                                |            |
| adjusting the speed                       |            |
| automatic thread cutting function         |            |
| automatically resuming                    |            |
| edges or corners                          |            |
| key functions                             |            |
| manually resuming                         |            |
| restarting from the beginning             |            |
| ribbons or tape                           |            |
| selecting patterns                        |            |
| small fabrics                             |            |
| thread color display                      |            |
| thread trimming function                  |            |
| Embroidery card                           |            |
| Embroidery card slot                      |            |
| Embroidery edit                           |            |
| changing the thread color                 |            |
| combined patterns                         |            |
| custom thread table                       |            |
| explanation of functions                  |            |
| key functions                             |            |
| repeated patterns                         |            |
| Embroidery foot "W"                       |            |
| Embroidery foot height                    |            |
| Embroidery frame display                  |            |
| Embroidery frames                         |            |
| attaching                                 | 162        |
| inserting fabric                          |            |
| removing                                  |            |
| types                                     |            |
| using the embroidery sheet                | 150<br>160 |
| Embroidery needle plate cover             | 165        |
| Embroidery patterns                       |            |
| checking the position                     | 163        |
| combining                                 |            |
| editing                                   |            |
| pattern selection screens                 |            |
| patterns which use appliqué               |            |
| retrieving                                |            |
| revising                                  |            |
| saving                                    |            |
| selecting                                 |            |
| sewing                                    |            |
| using a frame pattern to make an appliqué |            |
| Embroidery sheet                          | · · · ·    |
| Embroidery unit                           |            |
| Emprotectly unit                          |            |

| carriage       |   |
|----------------|---|
| carrying case  | 4 |
| release button |   |
| Error messages |   |
| Eyelet         |   |
| ,              |   |

#### F

| Fabrics                                  |
|------------------------------------------|
| fabric/thread/needle combinations41      |
| sewing heavyweight fabrics47             |
| sewing lightweight fabrics               |
| sewing stretch fabrics                   |
| Fagoting93                               |
| Feed dog position switch1, 3, 85, 107    |
| Feed dogs2, 83, 107                      |
| Flat bed attachment1, 146                |
| Flat fell Seam69                         |
| Foot controller1, 45                     |
| Forward/Back key171, 173                 |
| Frame-securing lever                     |
| free-motion quilting                     |
| free-motion echo quilting foot "E"86     |
| free-motion open toe quilting foot "O"85 |
| free-motion quilting foot "C"83          |
| free-motion sewing mode83                |

#### G

| Gathering |  |
|-----------|--|
| Guancing  |  |

# Н

| Handle       | 1  |
|--------------|----|
| Handwheel    |    |
| Hard case    |    |
| Heirloom     |    |
| Hemstitching |    |
| daisy stitch |    |
| drawn work   | 96 |
|              |    |

## I

# K

| Key functions                 |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| character/decorative stitches |    |
| embroidery                    |    |
| embroidery edit               |    |
| utility stitches              | 12 |
| Knee lifter                   |    |

# L

| Languages                    |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| LCD cover                    |    |
| LCD screen                   |    |
| adjusting                    |    |
| brightness                   |    |
| cleaning                     |    |
| locking                      |    |
| Lower threading              |    |
| pulling up the bobbin thread |    |
| setting the bobbin           |    |
| winding the bobbin           | 23 |
| 0                            |    |

#### Μ

| Machine operation mode key |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Main power switch          |  |
| Mirror image key           |  |
| Multi color key            |  |
| Multi-directional sewing   |  |

#### Index

| N I |
|-----|
| IN  |

| Needle                            |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| changing the needle               |           |
| changing the needle position      |           |
| fabric/thread/needle combinations |           |
| mode                              |           |
| twin needle                       |           |
| Needle bar thread guides          | 2, 33, 34 |
| Needle clamp screw                |           |
| Needle mode selection key         |           |
| Needle plate                      |           |
| Needle position                   |           |
| Needle Position button            |           |

#### 0

| ON/OFF button     |      | 1,  | 10 |
|-------------------|------|-----|----|
| Operation buttons |      |     |    |
| Overcasting       | .71, | 73, | 74 |

### Р

| Patchwork                        |             |
|----------------------------------|-------------|
| Pattern explanation key          |             |
| Piecing                          |             |
| Pintuck                          |             |
| pivoting                         | 53          |
| Power cord                       |             |
| Power cord receptacle            |             |
| Presser foot                     | ŕ           |
| attaching                        |             |
| pressure                         |             |
| removing                         |             |
| types                            |             |
| Presser foot code                | 11, 155     |
| Presser foot holder              |             |
| Presser foot holder screw        |             |
| Presser foot lever               |             |
| Presser Foot Lifter button       |             |
| Presser foot/Needle exchange key | 37, 39, 145 |
| Pretension disk                  | 1, 24, 26   |
|                                  |             |

## Q

| Quilting            | 79 |
|---------------------|----|
| free-motion         | 83 |
| with satin stitches | 82 |

## R

| Race                                 | 226      |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| Repeated patterns                    | 213      |
| Retrieving                           |          |
| character/decorative stitch patterns |          |
| computer                             |          |
| embroidery patterns                  |          |
| machine's memory                     | 140, 191 |
| stitch settings                      | 61       |
| USB media                            |          |
| utility stitches                     |          |
| Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch button  |          |
| Reverse/Reinforcement stitches       |          |
| Rotate key                           |          |

#### S

| Satin stitches82              | , 126 |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Saving                        |       |
| character/decorative stitches | 136   |
| computer139                   | , 190 |
| embroidery patterns           |       |
| machine's memory136           |       |
| stitch settings               | 60    |
| USB media138                  |       |
|                               |       |

| utility stitches60                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Scallop stitches                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| Settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| automatic reinforcement stitching                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| automatic thread cutting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| display language                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| embroidery settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| general settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| machine setting mode key16, 176, 210                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
| screen brightness                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| sewing settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| stitch length                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| stitch width                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| thread tension                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| thread trimming                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| Sewing<br>change direction                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| curves                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| heavyweight fabrics                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| lightweight fabrics                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| reinforcement stitches                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |
| stretch fabrics                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| Sewing speed controller (speed control slide)1, 3, 44                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
| Sewing type selection key                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| Shelltuck stitches                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| Shelltuck stitches   91     Side cutter   76                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Shelltuck stitches         91           Side cutter         76           Single/Repeat sewing key         125           Size key         181, 206                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125         Size key       181, 206         Size selection key       124         Smocking stitches       93         Specifications       239         Spool cap       1         Spool net       36         Spool pin       1, 25         Stabilizer       157         Start/Stop button       3                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125         Size key       181, 206         Size selection key       124         Smocking stitches       93         Specifications       239         Spool cap       1         Spool pin       36         Spool pin       1, 25         Stabilizer       157         Start/Stop button       3         Starting point key       180                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36Spool pin1, 25Stabilizer157Start/Stop button3Starting point key180Step stitch patterns132                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125         Size key       181, 206         Size selection key       124         Smocking stitches       93         Specifications       239         Spool cap       1         Spool pin       36         Spool pin       1, 25         Stabilizer       157         Start/Stop button       3         Starting point key       180                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36Spool pin1, 25Stabilizer157Start/Stop button3Starting point key180Step stitch patterns132                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125         Size key       181, 206         Size selection key       124         Smocking stitches       93         Specifications       239         Spool cap       1         Spool net       36         Spool pin       1, 25         Stabilizer       157         Start/Stop button       3         Starting point key       180         Step stitch patterns       132         Stitch length       49         Stitch selection screens       58, 117             |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125         Size key       181, 206         Size selection key       124         Smocking stitches       93         Specifications       239         Spool cap       1         Spool net       36         Spool pin       1, 25         Stabilizer       157         Start/Stop button       3         Starting point key       180         Step stitch patterns       132         Stitch length       49                                                            |  |
| Shelltuck stitches       91         Side cutter       76         Single/Repeat sewing key       125         Size key       181, 206         Size selection key       124         Smocking stitches       93         Specifications       239         Spool cap       1         Spool pin       1, 25         Stabilizer       157         Start/Stop button       3         Starting point key       180         Step stitch patterns       132         Stitch length       49         Stitch selection screens       58, 117         Stitch setting chart       243 |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36Spool pin1, 25Stabilizer157Start/Stop button3Starting point key180Step stitch patterns132Stitch length49Stitch selection screens58, 117Stitch setting chart243Straight stitch foot65                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36Spool pin1, 25Stabilizer157Start/Stop button3Starting point key180Step stitch patterns132Stitch length49Stitch setting chart243Stitch stitng chart243Straight stitch needle plate65                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| Shelltuck stitches91Side cutter76Single/Repeat sewing key125Size key181, 206Size selection key124Smocking stitches93Specifications239Spool cap1Spool net36Spool pin1, 25Stabilizer157Start/Stop button3Starting point key180Step stitch patterns132Stitch length49Stitch selection screens58, 117Stitch setting chart243Straight stitch foot65                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |

# Т

|                                    | _ |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Tape attaching7                    | 3 |
| Tape or elastic attaching9         | 4 |
| Thread                             |   |
| fabric/thread/needle combinations4 | 1 |
| thread tension                     | 4 |
| Thread color display17             | 7 |
| Thread cutter                      |   |
| Thread Cutter button               | 3 |
| Thread density key12               | 6 |
| Thread guide                       | 5 |
| Thread guide plate1, 26, 2         | 9 |
| Thread marks                       |   |
| Thread palette key                 |   |
| Thread trimming17                  | 5 |
| Threading manually                 | 1 |
| Top cover                          | 1 |
| Top stitching9                     | 2 |
| Touch pen                          | 9 |
| holder                             |   |
| Trial key16                        | 3 |
| Troubleshooting23                  | 0 |
| Twin needle                        | 4 |
|                                    |   |

| Upper threading                        |             |
|----------------------------------------|-------------|
| threading manually                     |             |
| twin needle mode                       |             |
| using the "Automatic Threading" button |             |
| using the spool net                    |             |
| using the vertical spool pin           |             |
| USB media                              |             |
| recalling                              |             |
| saving                                 |             |
| usable                                 |             |
| USB port connector                     | ,<br>,      |
| for computer                           | 1, 139, 190 |
| for media                              | 1, 138, 189 |
| Utility stitches                       |             |
| key functions                          | 12          |
| pattern explanation key                |             |
| retrieving                             |             |
| saving                                 | 60          |
| selecting                              |             |
| sewing type selection key              | 61          |
| stitch selection screens               | 58          |
| stitch setting chart                   |             |
|                                        |             |

## V

| Vertical spool pin30 |
|----------------------|
|----------------------|

## W

# Ζ

| Zigzag stitches71 |
|-------------------|
| Zipper insertion  |
| centered111       |
| side112           |

# U

\_

English 882-S95 XE2542-001 Printed in Taiwan